Contents





Part 1

Scope & Sequence

Module 3: Adventure

Skills	Language	Life Skills, Values and Issues
7. How was your weekend?		Page 2
Reading: A diary entry; Robinson Crusoe **Writing:** Writing a diary entry giving your opninon about a fantastic day **Listening:** An interview with a musician **Speaking:** Talking about your weekend; discssing types of music; talking about past events	**Past simple time expressions** *I went to the museum last month.* *I went bowling three days ago.* **Questions review** *Did you go to the park?* *Yes, I did./ No, I didn't.* When did you go to the museum? **Responding to past events** *How was your weekend? It was great!*	**Life Skills:** Decision-making; negotiation; self-management; respecting the opinions of others **Values:** Workmanship; appreciation; perseverance; independence; respect **Issues:** Civilizational communication
8. The amazing world around us		Page 12
Reading: A text about the Tahya Masr Bridge; the Grand Egyptian Museum **Writing:** A paragraph on a museum about the twenty-first century; a fact file; a review of places giving your opinion **Listening:** Facts and figures; a quiz **Speaking:** Talking about measurements; making comparisons **Giving opinions:** Agreeing and disagreeing	**Comparative and superlative adjectives** *Mount Everest is higher than Mount Kilimanjaro.* *The world's widest suspension bridge opened in Cairo.*	**Life Skills:** Respect for diversity - respecting the opinions of others; communication - good listening, self expression **Issues:** National unity, citizenship, loyalty and belonging
9. Adventure!		Page 22
Reading: Holiday plans; a postcard; Around the World in 80 Days **Writing:** A paragraph about an adventure sport; an email planning a trip **Listening:** Discussing adventure sports; a game; a presentation about a trip to the desert; a conversation about choosing activities **Speaking:** Discussing activities and travel plans; describing the weather	**going to for plans** *I'm going to visit Sinai. We're not going to go kayaking.* **Reflexive pronouns** *We enjoyed ourselves when we went sailing.* *He put on a hat to protect himself.*	**Life Skills:** Negotiation; communication; self-management; respect the opinions of others **Values:** Perseverance
Review C Revision of Units 7-9		**Page 32**

Module 4: Our future

Skills	Language	Life Skills, Values and Issues
10. Welcome to my home!		Page 34
Reading: Homes in ancient Egypt; round houses around the world **Writing:** - A paragraph describing your first school - A timeline of a famous person's life - A diagram of future houses **Listening:** A podcast about homes of the future **Speaking:** Saying what things are made of; predicting the future; saying years	**is/are made of** *The sofa is made of leather. The cushions are made of cotton.* **will for predictions** *There will be electric cars in the future.* *We will go to the moon.*	**Life Skills:** Creativity - flexibility in generating a diversity of ideas; good listening and self-expression **Values:** Curiosity; appreciation of science and scientists; objectivity **Issues:** Technological awareness; sustainable development; health and population issues
11. On land and sea		Page 44
Reading: A text about sea life; a leaflet about plastic pollution; The Old Man and the Sea **Writing:** Writing rules; planning and writing an advertisement, a paragraph explaining a beach clean-up day **Listening:** A talk about a nature reserve **Speaking:** Talking about saving the environment; asking for and giving instructions	**Zero conditional** *If it rains, we get wet.* *I feel tired when it's late.* **must/mustn't** *You must listen to other students' ideas.* *You mustn't make all the decisions yourself.*	**Life Skills:** Collaboration, sharing and productivity, set clear goals **Values:** Identify the problem; analyse the parts of the problem; help others; self-control/resilience **Issues:** Environmental responsibility
12. My future		Page 54
Reading: An interview with a marine biologist; a text about future plans; a text about traditional jobs in Africa; an essay predicting the future **Writing:** A paragraph giving information about the future **Listening:** A description of a job; an interview with a marine biologist; people talking about their future plans **Speaking:** Describing and asking questions about jobs	**Relative pronouns with who** *A teacher is a person who teaches students.* **Question tags** *It isn't an easy job, is it?* *You don't have a brother, do you?* **The first conditional** *If I go to university, I'll study maths.* *I won't pass my exams if I don't work hard.*	**Life Skills:** Productivity; set clear goals **Values:** Cooperation, mercy **Issues:** Environmental pollution; appreciation of science and scientists; independence, technological awareness
Review D Revision of Units 10-12		**Page 64**

How to write a paragraph كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

كيفية الإجابة على السؤال السادس في الامتحان (paragraph)

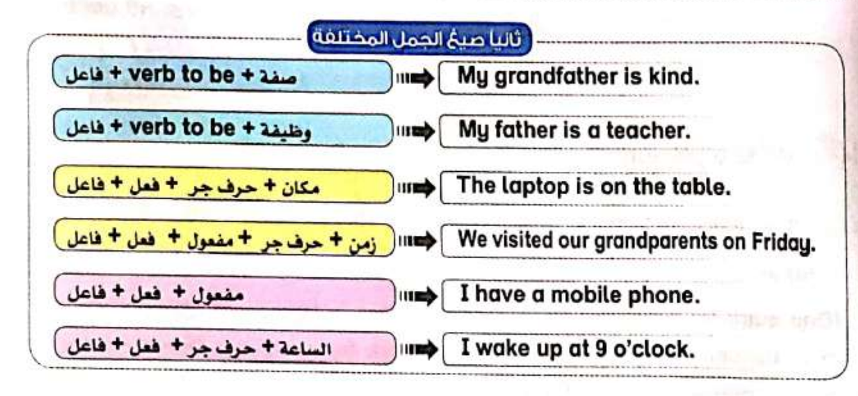
يطلب من الطالب كتابة فقرة إنشائية عن موضوع من موضوعات المنهج مكونة من ٧٠ إلى ٨٠ كلمة بعد أن تم تعديل السؤال هذا العام بحيث يُعطى لهم اسم الموضوع فقط.

• حتى نكّون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن ندرس الآتي جيدًا:

أولا ترتيب الجملة

فاعل			فعل		تكملة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شيء	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ماضي بسيط / مستمر	ظرف زمان – مكان/صفة/حال
Ahmed	school	car	is going / go / goes	was doing / did	home / yesterday happy / well

ثانيا صيغ الجمل المختلفة



Form	Example
فاعل + verb to be + صفة	My grandfather is kind.
فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة	My father is a teacher.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + مكان	The laptop is on the table.
فاعل + فعل + مفعول + حرف جر + زمن	We visited our grandparents on Friday.
فاعل + فعل + مفعول	I have a mobile phone.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + الساعة	I wake up at 9 o'clock.

A model Paragraph

Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

(Your friend)

My friend is Ahmed. He is a clever student. He always comes frist at school. All his teachers like him. All his friends like him, too. He has many hobbies. He plays chess at home with his brother. He plays football every week with his friends. His favourite food is koshari. He spends his free time reading and writing short stories. He doesn't like watching TV or playing video games. He always helps mother at home. Ahmed is so kind.

Module 3 Adventure Prep. 1



UNIT 7

How was your weekend?

Objectives

Reading:
A diary entry; Robinson Crusoe

Writing:
A diary entry giving your opinion about a fantastic day

Listening:
An interview with a musician

Speaking:
Talking about your weekend; discussing types of music

Language:
Past simple time expressions; questions review; responding to past events with *although* or *because*

Life Skills:
Making decisions

"Key Vocabulary"

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في جزء التسميع في آخر الكتاب

aquarium	معرض أحياء مائية	bowling alley*	صالة البولينج
planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية	haircut	حلاقة الشعر
sports centre	مركز رياضي	nervous	متوتر
shopping centre	مركز تسوق	exhibition	معرض
funfair	ملاهي	school canteen	مقصف (كانتين) المدرسة
football stadium	استاد كرة قدم	dolphin	دولفين
museum	متحف	beach	شاطئ
restaurant	مطعم		

Vocabulary

weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	together	معًا
wheel	عجلة دوارة (في الملاهي)	fun	متعة
stars	نجوم	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
birthday	عيد ميلاد	the same	نفس الشيء
whale	حوت	most	معظم
great	رائع	aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر
team	فريق	dark	ظلام
the Earth	كوكب الأرض	statue	تمثال
the moon	القمر	salad	سلطة
café	مقهى	delicious	لذيذ
diary	يوميات	side	جانب
exciting	مثير	move (d)	ينتقل / يتحرك
plan	خطة	hope (d)	يأمل
school uniform	زي مدرسي	decide (d)	يقرر
friendly	ودود	add (ed)	يضيف

Words & Meanings

aquarium معرض أحياء مائية	an indoor centre where you can look at sea animals and fish swimming in water
bowling alley صالة البولينج	a place where you can go bowling
canteen كانتين	a dining room in an office building[1] or school
museum متحف	a building to keep and display[2] important things from the past
nervous متوتر	worried or frightened[3] about something
sports centre مركز رياضي	a place where you can do sports indoors
stadium استاد رياضي	a place where you can play or watch sports matches
planetarium مبنى القبة السماوية	an indoor centre where you can learn about stars and planets[4]
funfair ملاهي	a park with fun[5] rides and games

Arabic Meaning
1- مبنى
2- يعرض
3- مرعوب
4- كواكب
5- ممتع

Expressions

Let's + inf.	هيا بنا..
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
go bowling	يلعب البولينج
do the homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي
have a fantastic weekend	يقضي اسبوع رائع
have a haircut	يقص شعره
take the bus to	يستقل الاتوبيس إلى

Prepositions

ride on a wheel	يركب عجلة دوارة
on my birthday	في عيد ميلادي
learn about	يتعلم عن
help...with...	يساعد ... في ....
drive from... to...	يقود سيارة من ... إلى...
frightened of	مرعوب من
a plan for	خطة لـــ.
good at	جيد في

Word Differences

feel	يشعر	fall	يسقط
whale	حوت	wall	حائط
great	رائع	greet	يحيي
take	يستغرق / يأخذ	talk	يتحدث
café	مقهى (مكان)	coffee	قهوة (مشروب)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
ride	يركب	rode	drive	يقود سيارة	drove
win	يفوز	won	sit	يجلس	sat
leave	يغادر	left	teach	يدرّس	taught



Language Notes

1 ➤ (go) with sports

ـ تستخدم go مع الرياضيات والانشطة التى تنتهى بــ (-ing):

- go bowling يلعب البولينج
- go swimming يذهب للسباحة
- go shopping يذهب للتسوق
- go fishing يذهب للصيد

2 ➤ like

ـ يأتى بعد الفعل like فعلاً مضافًا له (-ing) أو اسم (n):

ex. Sara likes history and she likes playing games.

Reading



Ziad's questions



Arabic Meaning
١- عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
٢- عجلة دوارة
٣- معرض
٤- سمك الدولفين
٥- نجوم
٦- البولنج



Say it correctly
* exhibition
ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (إكس) مع عدم نطق (hi)

Tapescript

Dina: It was my birthday last Saturday, so I went to the museum[1] with my mum and sister, and we saw some old statues[2]. We learned a lot.

In the evening, I wanted go to the funfair, but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant. I love my brother, so we went the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday, too! And two days ago, on Sunday, we went to the planetarium*[3], but it was closed.

So, we took a bus to the aquarium*[4] on the other side of town. It was fantastic, I saw a shark!

Arabic Meaning
١- متحف
٢- تماثيل
٣- مبنى القبة السماوية
٤- معرض أحياء مائية

Say it correctly
* planetarium / aquarium
ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمات مثل صوت (a) فى كلمة square
* statue
ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة (shoe) تمامًا.

Reading

Adam's diary

Sunday 8th May
Yesterday our family moved to[1] our new house in Alexandria. It took[2] three hours[3] to drive from our old house in Cairo.

Monday 9th May
This morning, Mum and I went shopping[4] to buy a new school uniform[5] for me. I hope students are friendly[6] in my new school!

Tuesday 10th May
Today I went to my new school. I was quite nervous[7], but I sat next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen[8].

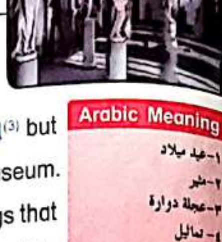
Monday 16th May
What a fantastic weekend! I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football in the park[9]. I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun[10]! On Sunday, Mum helped me with my homework. Then Dad and I went to the sports centre[11]. It is great[12], there is a really big swimming pool[13].

Arabic Meaning
١- ينتقل إلى
٢- إستغرق
٣- ساعات
٤- ذهبا للتسوق
٥- زى مدرسى
٦- ودود
٧- متوتر
٨- مقصف (كانتين)
٩- متنزه
١٠- متعة
١١- مركز رياضى
١٢- رائع
١٣- حمام سباحة

Reading



Nahla's diary



I had a fantastic weekend! It was my friend Dalia's birthday[1] and her family took us to some exciting[2] places. In the morning, we went to the funfair. I didn't go on the big wheel[3] but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum. We saw some very old statues[4]. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late!

Arabic Meaning

١- عيد ميلاد
٢- مثير
٣- عجلة دوارة
٤- تماثيل

Reading

Dad likes sports. He is very good at[1] swimming. Mum loves cooking[2]. Her salads are delicious![3]! Ismail likes being outside[4] and he doesn't like the city. Ismail's sister is five. She likes making things.

Arabic Meaning

١- جيد في
٢- الطهي
٣- لذيذ
٤- بالخارج



Say it correctly



* alley — ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (إى).

Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

Check Up Exercises

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A/An .... is a place where you can play or watch sports matches. SB
   a) canteen b) stadium c) museum d) aquarium
2. Let's go on the big wheel at the .... this weekend! WB
   a) aquarium b) museum c) planetarium d) funfair
3. The tourists visited a famous .... where they saw many ancient statues.
   a) cinema b) museum c) funfair d) planetarium
4. On my first day at my new school, I felt really ....
   a) cheap b) bright c) delicious d) nervous



5. I will go .... with my dad soon.
   a) shops b) shopping c) to shop d) a shop

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في آخر الكتاب.

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I loved the fish but I didn't see any whales at the .... WB
   a) bowling alley b) aquarium c) planetarium d) football stadium
2. We like riding on the big .... at the funfair.
   a) wall b) hall c) hole d) wheel
3. .... are very clever sea animals.
   a) Dolphins b) Goats c) Birds d) Monkeys
4. It was great at the .... My team won 2-0! WB
   a) museum b) football stadium c) canteen d) theatre
5. The balls are very heavy at the .... WB
   a) aquarium b) museum c) bowling alley d) theatre
6. Hassan is really fit. He spends most of his time at the ....
   a) aquarium b) museum c) funfair d) sports centre
7. We learn a lot about the Earth and the moon at the .... WB
   a) bowling alley b) aquarium c) planetarium d) football stadium
8. A/An .... is a dinning room in an office building or school. SB
   a) canteen b) stadium c) museum d) aquarium
9. There are some fantastic paintings at the ....
   a) sports centre b) funfair c) aquarium d) exhibition
10. The .... in the sky are bright.
    a) places b) statues c) pools d) stars
11. I .... a haircut once a month.
    a) do b) have c) build d) hurt
12. I saw some fishermen and big boats at the ....
    a) playground b) peach c) beach d) funfair
13. I had lunch with my family at a big .... in Giza.
    a) dish b) restaurant c) cooker d) menu

Grammar

Past time expressions

1 Revise the past simple tense راجع زمن الماضي البسيط

Form / التكوين

→ Subject (كل الضمائر) فاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

• تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة

أولا: الأفعال المنتظمة : هى الأفعال التى يتكون منها الماضى بإضافة (ed) لآخر الفعل

play → played   walk → walked

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) نضيف (d) فقط للفعل

like → liked   dance → danced

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف ساكن + حرف y نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied)

study → studied   carry → carried

- يضاعف الحرف الأخير فى بعض الأفعال عند إضافة ed

stop → stopped   travel → travelled

ثانيا: الأفعال غير المنتظمة: هى الأفعال التى لايضاف لها ed فى الماضى وتحفظ كما هى

go → went   eat → ate   have/has → had
am/is → was   are → were

Affirmative / الاثبات

ex. We climbed a mountain yesterday.
ex. I played games last week.

Negative / النفى

→ Subject + didn't + inf.مصدر الفعل

ex. I didn't visit my family.   ex. He didn't eat fish.

Question / السؤال

→ (كلمة إستفهام) Did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ... ?

ex. Did she ride her bike?

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:
- Yes, she did.   - No, she didn't.

ex. A: What did you do yesterday?
B: We went to the funfair.

Usage / الاستخدام

• يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل تم وانتهى فى الماضى

ex. We met a famous footballer yesterday.
ex. Once, there was a fire in our street.

2 Past time expressions تعبيرات الماضي

- نستخدم الكلمات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

yesterday	أمس	last...	... السابق
...ago	منذ ...	once	ذات مرة
in (2010)	فى عام (٢٠١٠)	in the past	فى الماضي

ex. I went to the museum last night.
ex. We went bowling four years ago.



Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: SB

1. What did you do .... weekend?
   a last   b ago   c next   d now
2. A: When did you travel to Aswan?
   B: ....
   a Tomorrow   b Yesterday   c Next week   d In 2022
3. We saw an exhibition about dolphins three months .... SB
   a for   b next   c last   d ago
4. It's Wednesday today, so it was Tuesday .... WB
   a yesterday   b this morning   c tomorrow   d next week
5. Last week I .... to London on holiday.
   a go   b went   c goes   d am going
6. .... our family moved to our new house in Alexandria. SB
   a Tomorrow   b Next week   c Yesterday   d Now

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I am quite nervous on my first school day. (..........)
2. Tomorrow ,Hala went to school by bus. (..........)
3. Hassan move to Cairo ten years ago. SB (..........)

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في آخر الكتاب.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mum and I went shopping .... Friday.
   a next b now c last d ago
2. It's January now. It was December .... month. WB
   a last b next c ago d in
3. A: What day .... Adam and his family move house?
   B: Last month.
   a do b did c does d will
4. I was at school at 8 a.m. today. What time did you arrive .... ? WB
   a now b tomorrow c yesterday d ago
5. The students of class 1B went to the funfair .... week.
   a last b next c in d ago
6. Hany .... some new shoes last Saturday. WB
   a buys b buy c is buying d bought
7. It's ten past ten. The ten o'clock bus left ten minutes .... WB
   a ago b past c to d in
8. I went shopping with my Grandad .... Sunday.
   a next b last c in d at
9. Nahla .... a fantastic weekend last month. WB
   a has b have c had d having
10. A: .... you ready for yesterday's exam?
    B: Yes, sure.
    a Were b Did c Could d Do

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ali and I have lunch together yesterday. (..........)
2. Adam did his homework an hour age. SB (..........)
3. He driving to Alex with his family last Saturday. SB (..........)
4. I ride on the big wheel last week. (..........)

"Key Vocabulary"

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى جزء التسميع فى اخر الكتاب

musician	موسيقار	nearby	قريب - مجاور
sailor	بحّار	alone	بمفرده - وحده
cave	كهف	coconut	ثمرة جوز الهند
terrible	فظيع / سئ جدًا	sink (sank, sunk) (n)	يغرق (للأشياء) / حوض
jungle	أدغال		
Types of music			
jazz music	موسيقى الجاز	opera music	موسيقى الأوبرا
rock music	موسيقى الروك	classical music	موسيقى كلاسيكية
pop music	موسيقى البوب	traditional music	موسيقى تقليدية

Vocabulary

interview	مقابلة شخصية	the trumpet	البوق (آلة موسيقية)
interviewer	المحاور (مدير الحوار)	although	بالرغم من
sound	صوت (شئ)	wet	مبلل
What type of...?	ما نوع...؟	warm	دافئ
French	اللغة الفرنسية	rocks	صخور
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	brown	بنّي اللون
band	فرقة موسيقية	shape	شكل - مُجسم
adventure story	قصة مغامرة	foot (feet)	قدم (أقدام)
island	جزيرة	prefer (red)	يفضل
storm	عاصفة	happen (ed)	يَحْدث
dead	ميت		

Words & Meanings

Word	Meaning
alone بمفرده - وحده	not with other people
coconuts ثمار جوز الهند	large brown nuts[1] that grow on palm trees[2]
sailor بحّار	someone who sails[3] or works on a boat or ship
sink (r) يغرق	go down into water
terrible فظيع/سئ جدًا	very bad
sink (n) حوض	something in a kitchen we wash dishes in

Arabic Meaning
١- ثمار جوز / بندق
٢- نخيل
٣- يبحر

Expressions

play the piano	يعزف على البيانو
like ... best	يحب ... جدًا
walk along the beach	يسير بمحاذاة الشاطئ
walk through a jungle	يسير خلال أدغال
work on a boat/ a ship	يعمل على قارب / سفينة
go down into water	يغوص في الماء
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم
write a diary	يكتب يوميات
write songs	يكتب أغاني

Prepositions

good for	مفيد لـ
look for	يبحث عن
by bus	بالأتوبيس
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
on the island	على الجزيرة
on the beach	على الشاطئ
a story by ...	قصة كتبها ...
sleep on a bed	ينام على فراش
get up	يصحو / يستيقظ

Word Differences

sound	صوت (شئ)	voice	صوت (إنسان)
interviewer	المحاور (مدير الحوار)	interviewee	من يُجري معه الحوار (الضيف)
hungry	جائع	angry	غاضب
sink	يغوص/يغرق (للأشياء)	drown	يغوص/يغرق (للأشخاص)
nearby	قريب	nearly	تقريبًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
write	يكتب	wrote	think	يعتقد	thought
find	يجد	found	get up	يستيقظ	got up



Language Notes

1 dead • death

- **dead (adj)** ميت
  ex. Crusoe found a dead fish on the beach.
- **death (n)** الموت
  ex. The death of Ali's mother made him so sad.

2 alone • lonely

- **alone** بمفرده
  ex. You shouldn't leave a child alone in the house.
- **lonely** شاعر بالوحدة
  ex. Although I meet a lot of people, I feel lonely.

Tapescript



Interviewer : Marvin Allstar is a famous musician(1). He writes songs and plays(2) in a band(3). Hello, Marvin, what type(4) of music do you like?

Marvin : Hello. Well, I like jazz*(5) music best. I play the trumpet(6) in a jazz band.

Interviewer : The trumpet? When did you learn to play the trumpet?

Marvin : Oh, when I was about 12. I learned the piano first when I was four, and I moved on to the trumpet at 12. I like the sound of the trumpet.

Interviewer : Amazing! Do you like pop music(7)?

Marvin : No, I don't, and I don't like rock music(8). But I quite like traditional music(9).

Arabic Meaning

١-موسيقار
٢-يعزف
٣-فرقة موسيقية
٤-نوع
٥-موسيقى الجاز
٦-بوق
٧-موسيقى البوب
٨-موسيقى الروك
٩-موسيقى تقليدية

Reading



Robinson Crusoe

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story(1) by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor(2). One day his ship sank(3) because there was a really terrible(4) storm. Crusoe swam to a nearby(5) island*, but there were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary(6) of what happened to him on the island.

18th December

I arrived on the island four days ago. Today I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone(7). This afternoon I found a dead(8) fish and ate it but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish!

19th December

I found a coconut(9) on the beach today. It was delicious. It rained last night and I was cold and wet, so today I went to look for a cave(10). I want a warm place to sleep. I walked through a jungle(11) and there were some rocks, but no caves.

20th December

I found a cave!

Arabic Meaning

١-قصة مغامرة
٢-بحار
٣-غرق / يغرق
٤-فظيع / سيء جدًا
٥-قريب
٦-يوميات
٧-بمفرده
٨-ميتة
٩-ثمرة جوز الهند
١٠-كهف
١١-أدغال



Say it correctly

- * island — لاحظ أن حرف (s) فى هذه الكلمة لا ينطق.
- * jazz — لاحظ أن حرف (j) فى هذه الكلمة ينطق مثل صوت (د ج).



Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is someone who works on a boat or ship. WB
   a) seller b) musician c) sailor d) dentist
2. All my family went to the party and left me ....
   a) abroad b) dead c) popular d) alone
3. The ship .... because it hit a very big rock.
   a) thank b) sank c) thought d) drowned
4. I didn't like this story. I thought the writing was .... WB
   a) nice b) interesting c) amazing d) terrible
5. .... are large brown nuts that grow on palm trees. WB
   a) Coconuts b) Melons c) Apples d) Cucumbers

Homework Exercises

يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى فى آخر الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Ali lives in a/an .... place, so I always visit him.
   a) far b) faraway c) nearby d) alone
2. Do you like working with other people, or do you prefer to work ....? WB
   a) lonely b) faraway c) alone d) nearby
3. I don't know how to go through the .... There are too many trees there.
   a) jungle b) playground c) cave d) city
4. I like ...., but it is difficult to open them. WB
   a) watermelons b) coconuts c) apples d) bananas
5. Crusoe's ship sank because there was a really .... storm. SB
   a) nice b) light c) terrible d) cheerful
6. My grandfather was a .... and visited countries all over the world. WB
   a) sail b) pupil c) student d) sailor
7. Robinson Crusoe lived .... an island for many years.
   a) on b) out c) with d) about
8. Do you think this glass bottle will .... in the water? WB
   a) run b) swim c) think d) sink
9. Wild animals usually sleep in .... in mountains.
   a) tents b) caves c) beds d) rivers
10. A/An .... is someone who plays music as a job.
   a) sailor b) musician c) farmer d) architect



Types of questions

• يوجد في اللغة الإنجليزية نوعان من الأسئلة:

1 Yes /No Questions

• هي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص، مثل: (be / do / can / have / are / will) ونجيب عنها بـ (Yes) أو (No)

ex. Did you go to the park? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.
ex. Are you happy? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.

ملاحظات:

• عادة ما نستخدم فى الإجابة نفس الفعل المساعد/الناقص.
• ترتفع نبرة الصوت في نهاية هذا النوع من الأسئلة.

2 Wh- Questions

• هي الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام مثل:

What	ما/ماذا (للأشياء)	How many	كم العدد
Where	أين (للمكان)	How much	ما ثمن / كم كمية
Who	من (للأشخاص)	How long	ما مدة / طول
When	متى (للزمن)	How often	كم عدد المرات
How	كيف (للطريقة / للحال)	What time	ما الوقت
Why	لماذا (للسبب)	What colour	ما لون

ex. What music does he like? - He likes pop.

ملاحظات:

• عادة ما نستخدم فى الإجابة نفس الفعل والزمن.
• تنخفض نبرة الصوت في نهاية هذا النوع من الأسئلة.

تذكر:

١- يتم تكوين السؤال كما يلى:

(كلمة إستفهام) ❶ + فعل مساعد ناقص ❷ + فاعل ❸ + فعل رئيسى ❹ + تكملة...?

٢- إذا احتوت الإجابة على فعل مضافًا له (s / es / ies) تستخدم (does) كفعل مساعد فى السؤال:

ex. A: What music does he like? B: He likes jazz.

إذا احتوت الإجابة على فعل فى الماضى البسيط تستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد:

ex. A: Where did he go yesterday? B: He went to the aquarium.

أما إذا احتوت الإجابة على فعل بالمصدر فتستخدم (do) كفعل مساعد:

ex. A: How often do you visit your grandad? B: I visit him every week.

٣- تذكر أن (are you) فى السؤال تتحول إلى (I am / We are) فى الإجابة:

ex. A: What are you doing? B: We are studying. OR B: I am studying.

٤- تذكر أن (were you) فى السؤال تتحول إلى (I was / We were) فى الإجابة:

ex. A: Where were you yesterday? B: I was in Giza. OR B: We were in Giza.

Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: What time is it? B: It .... quarter past ten. SB
   a is b was c has d does
2. A: When .... you go to the funfair? B: I went there last week.
   a did b are c were d does
3. A: How do you come to school? WB
   B: I .... to school by bus.
   a am coming b come c came d comes
4. A: Are you ready for your exams? B: Yes, I ....
   a are b is c am d was
5. A: Can you run fast? B: Yes, I ....
   a can't b amn't c am d can
6. A: .... you like classical music? B: No, I don't. SB
   a Are b Have c Do d Did
7. A: Why .... you go to school late? B: Because I got up late.
   a do b did c does d were

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. A: How was the exam? B: It **is** great. (............)
2. A: What did you have for lunch? B: We **have** rice with meat. (............)
3. A: **Can** you do well in your exam? B: Yes, I could. (............)

Homework Exercises

© يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى فى آخر الكتاب.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: When did you go to the sport centre? SB
   B: I .... there four days ago.
   a go b goes c went d going
2. A: Have you got a new jacket? B: No, I .... SB
   a do b doesn't c amn't d haven't
3. .... you got a laptop? B: No, I haven't.
   a Are b Do c Did d Have
4. A: Has Ali got an umbrella? B: Yes, he ....
   a can b is c has d did
5. A: .... your best friend speak French? B: Yes, he can. WB
   a Do b Can c Is d Are
6. A: .... time do you go to school? B: At half past seven. WB
   a When b What c Where d How
7. A: .... you like jazz? WB
   B: No, I don't like jazz, but I like pop.
   a Are b Do c Did d Will
8. A: .... Ali go to school tomorrow? B: No, he won't.
   a Will b Does c Is d Was

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. A: Does Hassan like science? B: Yes, he **do**. (............)
2. **Do** you taller than your bothers and sisters? WB (............)
3. **What** often do you go to school? (............)

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان

"What the people in your family like doing" SB

....

....

....

....

....

"Key Vocabulary"

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى جزء التسميع فى آخر الكتاب

barbecue	حفل شواء	concert	حفل موسيقى
olives	زيتون	pepper	فلفل

Vocabulary

expensive	غالى الثمن	theatre	مسرح
tired	مُتعب	writer	كاتب
closed	مغلق	hotel	فندق
windy	شديد الرياح	Siwa	واحة سيوة
then	بعد ذلك	journey	رحلة طويلة
favourite	مفضل	stone	حجر
whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء	loud	عالى الصوت - صاخب
musical instrument	آلة موسيقية	ticket	تذكرة
fantastic	رائع	arrive (d)	يصل
bread	خبز	try (ied)	يحاول/يجرب
Kenya	دولة كينيا	plan (ned)	يخطط

Expressions

have a barbecue	لديه حفل شواء
go on holiday	يذهب فى إجازة
get a ticket for	يحصل على تذكرة لـ
drop a phone	يُسقط هاتف
enjoy + V-ing.	... يستمع بـ
take a selfie	يلتقط صورة سلفي

Prepositions

wake... up	يوقظ
in the afternoon	بعد الظهر
happy about	سعيد بخصوص
look around	يتجول حول
drive ... to ...	يوصل ... بالسيارة إلى ...
with olives	بالزيتون

Word Differences

remember	يتذكر	remind	يذكّر
tired	مُتعَب (شاعر بالتعب)	tiring	مُتعِب (مسبب للتعب)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
lose	يخسر/يضيع	lost	understand	يفهم	understood
break	يكسر / ينكسر	broke			

Language Notes

1 What + be + subject + like?

- يستخدم هذا الأسلوب للسؤال عن صفات شخص/شيء.

ex. A: What is Ali like? B: He is tall with black hair.
A: What was the island like? B: It was very big.

2 • lose • miss

- lose (v)

-يفقد (يُضيِّع) شيء / يخسر «مباراة مثلاً».

ex. I lost my ticket so I bought another one.
ex. Our team lost the last match.

• تأتى فى التصريف الثالث بعد فعل (be / get) بمعنى (تائه / ضال الطريق)

ex. Those tourists are lost; we should help them.

- miss (v)

- يفوته شيء

ex. I missed the bus, so I took a taxi.

3 hope

- يستخدم الفعل hope بمعنى (يأمل) ويأتى بعده فاعل ثم فعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط أم المستقبل:

ex. I hope tomorrow is a better day.
ex. We hope Ali will join us.

Tapescript

One
Woman : Hi, Lina. How was your weekend?
Lina : Oh, it was terrible.
Woman : Oh dear, what happened?
Lina : I watched a football match at the stadium. But my team lost 5-2. Then I took a selfie[1] but I dropped my mobile phone and it broke.
Woman Oh dear!

Two
Man Hi Hisham. How was your weekend?
Hisham It was great! I went to the bowling alley with my cousins. Then we went to a pizza restaurant[2]. I had a pizza with olives[3] and peppers[4], and it was really good.

Three
Woman 2 : Hi Judy. How was your weekend?
Judy : It was OK on Saturday although I had lots of homework. But I went to the theatre[5] with my family in the evening.

Arabic Meaning
١- صورة سلفي
٢- مطعم
٣- زيتون
٤- فلفل
٥- مسرح

Reading



Dalia's diary

Sunday 13th August

Today was a terrible day! My baby brother **woke** me up at 5 am! I am so tired now. I went to the kitchen for breakfast but we had no milk or bread[1]. So Mum asked me to go to the shop but it was closed[2] because it was only 6.30 a.m.! **Then** I tried to do my maths homework[3] but I lost all my work because my laptop[4] stopped working. Although[5] we planned to[6] have a barbecue[7] in the afternoon, it was very windy[8]. We could not have it!
I hope[9] tomorrow is a better day!

Arabic Meaning

١- خبز
٢- مُغلق
٣- الواجب المنزلى
٤- جهاز لابتوب
٥- بالرغم من
٦- خططنا لـ
٧- حفل شواء
٨- شديد الرياح
٩- يأمل



Tapescript

(1)
Judy : I went to my cousin's house last weekend. **It was fantastic because** we played all my favourite games!

(2)
Khaled : I read a book by my favourite writer last week. **It was OK, although** it was not her best book.

(3)
Marwa : My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two kilometres! **It was terrible** because there were so many cars.

(4)
Hany : We read an English book at school today. **It was evry good,** although I didn't understand every word!

Reading



Amir's diary

Sunday 13th August

Today was a fantastic[1] day. First, I got up at 5 a.m. and had breakfast .Then, I got in the car with my family and we drove to Siwa[2]. Although it was a very long journey[3], I enjoyed reading my favourite[4] book in the car. We arrived very late but it is a beautiful place. We planned to look around, but we stayed in the hotel[5] because we were all very tired. I think tomorrow will be very interesting.

Arabic Meaning

١- رائع
٢- واحة سيوة
٣- رحلة طويلة
٤- مفضل
٥- فندق

Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We had a nice .... on the beach yesterday.
   a) hotel b) ticket c) wedding d) barbecue
2. The tourists anjoyed the .... .They said the music was fantastic.
   a) concert b) century c) year d) guide
3. We couldn't go to the park yesterday because it was ....
   a) favourite b) interesting c) windy d) nice
4. **A:** What happened to Ahmed last month?
   B: I really can't ....
   a) remember b) remind c) suggest d) harm
5. The music was so .... , so I left the party.
   a) fantastic b) amazing c) nice d) loud

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the windows were .... because it was so windy.
   a) open b) closed c) wide d) expensive
2. People always eat meat cooked over a fire in ....
   a) shows b) cinemas c) schools d) barbecues
3. Yesterday, I went home. .... I had lunch.
   a) First b) Then c) Than d) Third
4. We went to the .... and enjoyed listening to classical music.
   a) classroom b) sky c) mountain d) concert
5. My dad .... me to school in his car.
   a) rode b) went c) drove d) came
6. How did you get the .... for the final match?
   a) ticket b) player c) viewer d) playground
7. Tourists usually stay at comfortable .... when they visit Egypt.
   a) hospitals b) hotels c) schools d) theatres
8. After he worked for ten hours, he was really.
   a) tiring b) careless c) boring d) tired

9. We plan to go .... holiday in Luxor next week.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ with ⓓ about

10. We had a delicious pizza .... olives and pepper yesterday.
ⓐ with ⓑ a bout ⓒ for ⓓ on

Language Functions

Responding to past events with "although" or "because"

الاستجابة لأحداث ماضية باستخدام "بالرغم من although" أو "لأن because"

• عند الاستجابة لأحداث ماضية تستخدم التعبيرات الآتية متبوعة بـ (because) أو (although):

- It was OK. كان الأمر جيدًا.
- It was great / fantastic. كان رائعًا.
- It was terrible. كان فظيعًا.

ex. A: How was your weekend?
B: It was great because we went to the park.

• نستخدم (because) لإعطاء سبب شيء حيث تأتى النتيجة قبلها بينما يأتى السبب بعدها.

ex. The ship sank because there was a terrible storm.

• نستخدم (although) للتعبير عن التناقض.

ex. Although he was very hungry, he didn't want to eat another dead fish.




Exercises on Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue: WB

Ahmed : How was your birthday?
Ali : It was ❶ ....
Ahmed : Did you have a party?
Ali : Yes, I ❷ ....
Ahmed : ❸ .... did it start?
Ali : It started at seven.
Ahmed : How did you feel?
Ali : I felt really happy ❹ .... most of my friends came to the party.
Ahmed : What about your best friend?
Ali : ❺ .... he was ill, he came to the party.

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. We had a lot of fun at the swimming pool. It was .... big.
ⓐ real ⓑ really ⓒ realise ⓓ unreal

2. You should think carefully before you .... a decision.
ⓐ build ⓑ make ⓒ do ⓓ hurt

3. We went to the museum yesterday. I remember .... the things that the teacher taught us.
ⓐ all ⓑ every ⓒ no ⓓ not

4. A: Did you have a mobile phone? B: Yes, I .... one. WB
ⓐ did ⓑ had ⓒ was ⓓ has

5. A: Will Sameh travel to Alex? B: No, he .... travel to Tanta.
ⓐ won't ⓑ will ⓒ can't ⓓ isn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The work on that farm is <u>tired</u>. (............)
2. He was so tired so he stopped <u>to work</u>. (............)

Writing Skills

- عند كتابة مذكرات يراعى الآتى:
- استخدم زمن الماضى البسيط فى معظم الجمل.
- استخدم ضمائر المتحدث (I / We).
- اكتب الأحداث بترتيب حدوثها.
- تحدث عن مشاعرك وآمالك وأفكارك وآرائك.
- حاول أن يشمل كلامك على صور ورسوم.
- يمكن أن تنتهى جملة بعلامة تعجب (!) لتظهر عاطفة قوية «بعد معلومات مدهشة أو شيقة».
- اكتب حرف كبير بعد النقطة أو علامة التعجب.
- فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

❶ A fantastic day

Last Friday was a fantastic day. I went to my best friend's house in the morning and we played football in the park. I don't usually like football, but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun! In the afternoon, I went home. I did my homework and mum helped me with it. Then dad and I went to the sports centre. It was great because there was a really big swimming pool. I had a lot of fun.

2 What the people in your family like doing.

I have a big family. My father always likes to go to the football stadium. He goes there with my uncle. They like watching football matches there. My brother likes to go to the sports centre. He goes there three times a week. He wants to keep fit. My sister likes to go to the funfair. She goes there with her friends. They like to ride on the big wheel. I like to go to the aquarium. It is a very exciting place. I watch interesting sea animal there.

3 Your last weekend

I had a fantastic weekend! It was my friend Dalia's birthday and her family took us to some exciting places. In the morning, we went to the funfair. I didn't go on the big wheel but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum. We saw some very old statues. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late!

General Exercises on Unit 7

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar : What did you do last weekend?
Ahmed : I watched a football ❶ ....
Omar : ❷ .... did you watch it with?
Ahmed : I watched it with my friends.
Omar : ❸ .... it interesting?
Ahmed : Yes, it was. We had a great time.
Omar : Did your team ❹ .... the match?
Ahmed : Yes, my team won 2-0.
Omar : Will you go anywhere next weekend?
Ahmed : Yes, we will go to the ❺ .... to enjoy riding on the big wheel.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... is a building to keep and display important things from the past. SB
   a funfair b museum c canteen d sports centre
2. My aunt and uncle .... to London in 2018.
   a travel b travels c travelled d are travelling

3. Sara was ill, so she .... to school.
   a aren't come b don't come c doesn't come d didn't come
4. The students watched many sea animals and fish at the ....
   a sports centre b aquarium c planetarium d stadium
5. Your hair looks terrible, Omar. You must have a .... SB
   a team b statue c fun d haircut
6. A: When did you go to the museum?
   B: I .... to the museum four days ago.
   a go b went c goes d am going
7. I like fruit because it's good .... me. WB
   a at b for c about d on
8. A: Can you stand on your hands? B: Yes, I ....
   a can b have c am d are
9. A: .... Habiba like reading? B: Yes, she reads a lot.
   a Do b Does c Did d Can
10. Naguib Mahfouz was a very famous .... He wrote a lot of books.
   a singer b musician c baker d writer
11. A: How was your weekend? B: It was terrible .... I was so ill.
   a because b however c but d although
12. He didn't buy the mobile .... he didn't have enough money.
   a during b although c because d in
13. .... Mr Osman is so old, he is really active.
   a But b Although c Because d As
14. .... the film was interesting, I did not understand all of it. WB
   a Because b Since c When d Although
15. .... he is so ill, he works hard.
   a Because b As c Although d But

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Did you buy these shoes <u>tomorrow</u>? (............)
2. Last week, we <u>are</u> in Alex. (............)
3. Last night, I <u>watch</u> a football match. (............)
4. When I <u>am</u> young, I could run fast. (............)
5. <u>Are</u> you like listening to music? (............)
6. <u>Has</u> you got any sisters? WB (............)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on: مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان

"A fantastic day" WB

....
....

TEST 1 UNIT 7

A Listening

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى أخر الكتاب

1. It was Ali's ....
   a wedding b barbecue c birthday d holiday
2. The weekend was ....
   a fantastic b boring c tiring d terrible
3. They visited a/an .... after they visited the funfair.
   a cinema b museum c aquarium d theatre
4. They came home in the ....
   a morning b evening c afternoon d night

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue: WB

Mona : Do you like classical music, Dina.
Dina : Yes, I ❶ .... It's my favourite.
Mona : When ❷ .... you last go to a concert?
Dina : I went to a concert last year. It was fantastic.
Mona : Have you ❸ .... a ticket for the concert on Saturday?
Dina : Yes, I have.
Mona : ❹ .... I come with you?
Dina : Yes, you can. Are ❺ .... happy about that?
Mona : Yes, I am! It's fantastic.
Dina : You are always welcome.

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. One day his ship sank because there was a terrible storm. He swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people there. He walked along the beach, but he saw nobody there. Then he found a dead fish and ate it but it was not nice. Once, he found a coconut on the beach. It was delicious. It rained and he was cold and wet, so he went to look for a cave. He wanted a warm place to sleep.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Crusoe's ship sink?
   ....
2. How was Crusoe able to get to the island?
   ....
3. Would you like to live alone on an island? Why / Why not?
   ....

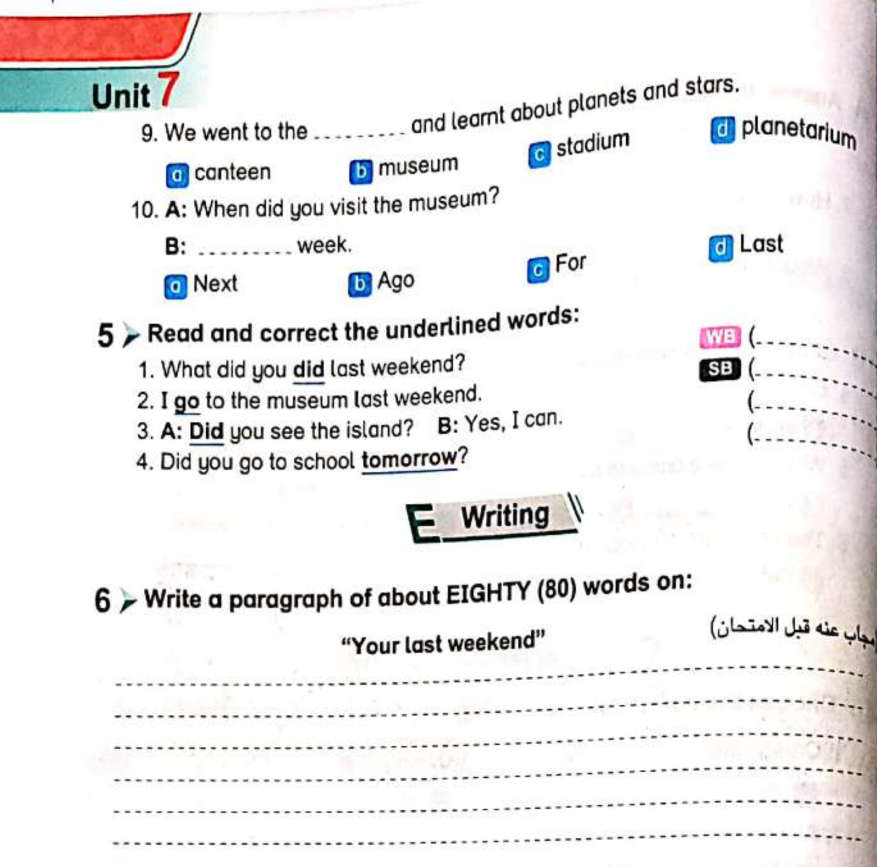
B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Crusoe wanted to find a cave to ....
   a sleep b hunt c sail d run
5. When Crusoe came to the island, there was .... there.
   a a sailor b a captain c no one d a pirate
6. The fish which Crusoe ate tasted ....
   a delicious b good c bad d nice

C Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Crusoe ate .... on the island. It was very nice. WB
   a rock b stone c coconut d paper
2. A: .... was your weekend? B: Fantastic!
   a Why b How c What d How often
3. When you put a stone in water, it .... WB
   a thinks b sinks c hurts d swims
4. People first played .... music a long time ago. WB
   a modern b new c traditional d careless
5. .... you got a new Camera?
   a Have b Are c Do d Were
6. A/An .... travels on ships or boats for a job. WB
   a dentist b musician c player d sailor
7. Tuesday 20th April was two months .... WB
   a when b ago c because d in
8. .... music is sometimes very loud. WB
   a Rock b Stone c Cook d Knock



9. We went to the .... and learnt about planets and stars.
   - a canteen
   - b museum
   - c stadium
   - d planetarium

10. A: When did you visit the museum?
    B: .... week.
   - a Next
   - b Ago
   - c For
   - d Last

5 ➤ Read and correct the underlined words:

WB (........)
SB (........)

1. What did you **did** last weekend? (........)
2. I **go** to the museum last weekend. (........)
3. A: **Did** you see the island? B: Yes, I can. (........)
4. Did you go to school **tomorrow**? (........)

E Writing

6 ➤ Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان)

"Your last weekend"

....

....

....

....

....

....

UNIT 8



The amazing world around us

Objectives

Reading:
A text about the Tahya Masr Bridge; the Grand Egyptian Museum

Writing:
A paragraph on a museum about the twenty-first century; a fact file; a review of places giving your opinion

Listening:
Facts and figures; a quiz

Speaking:
Talking about measurements; making comparisons

Language:
Comparative and superlative adjectives

Issues:
Loyalty and belonging

Life Skills:
Respecting different opinions

"Key Vocabulary"

bridge	جسر (كوبرى)	city	مدينة
pyramid	هرم	tower	برج
tunnel	نفق		

Vocabulary

amazing	مذهل - مدهش	thousand	ألف
metre = m	متر	million	مليون
kilometre = km	كيلومتر	the world	العالم
building	مبنى	country	بلد - قطر
important	هام	bank	ضفة نهر
ground	أرض	daily	يوميًا
hundred	مائة	link (ed)	يربط - يصل

Famous places

The Cairo-Alexandria desert road	طريق مصر إسكندرية الصحراوى	The Channel Tunnel	نفق المانش (بين انجلترا وفرنسا)
The Great Pyramid of Giza	الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة (مصر)	Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower	برج الساعة بأبراج البيت (بالسعودية)
The Library of Alexandria	مكتبة الإسكندرية	The Leaning Tower of Pisa	برج بيزا المائل
The Tahya Masr Bridge	جسر تحيا مصر	The King Causeway	جسر الملك فهد
The Luxor Temple	معبد الأقصر	The Gotthard tunnel	نفق جوتارد (بسويسرا)
The Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	Lake Baikal	بحيرة بايكال (بروسيا)
El Castillo Pyramid	هرم آل كاستلو (بالمكسيك)		

Countries and Cities

England	دولة انجلترا	France	دولة فرنسا
Russia	دولة روسيا	Saudi Arabia	دولة السعودية
Switzerland	دولة سويسرا	Tokyo	مدينة طوكيو (عاصمة اليابان)
Japan	دولة اليابان	Cairo	مدينة القاهرة (عاصمة مصر)

Words & Meanings

Word		Meaning
bridge	جسر	something used for people and cars to cross a road or river
tower	برج	a tall, narrow building
tunnel	نفق	something you can go through to travel under the sea or through[1] a mountain
pyramid	هرم	a large building that is square[2] at the bottom with four triangular[3] sides forming a point at the top
city	مدينة كبيرة	a large town

Arabic Meaning
١- عبر/خلال
٢- مربع الشكل
٣- مثلث الشكل

Prepositions

go under the sea	يمر أسفل البحر	go over the Nile	يمر فوق نهر النيل

Word Differences

tower	برج	tour	جولة سياحية
city	مدينة (كبيرة)	town	مدينة (صغيرة)
bank	ضفة النهر	beach	شاطئ بحر



Language Notes

1 Expressing measurements

- للسؤال عن القياسات يمكننا أن نستخدم (How) تليها صفة كما يلي:

How long..............?	كم طول..............؟	How tall..............?	كم ارتفاع / طول..........؟
How wide.............?	كم عرض / إتساع ...؟	How fast.............?	كم سرعة..................؟
How high...............?	كم ارتفاع............؟	How many...........?	كم عدد....................؟
How deep.............?	كم عمق.............؟	How old...............?	كم عمر....................؟

ex. How deep is the tunnel?
ex. How long is the road?

- للإجابة يمكنك أن تستخدم:

فاعل + be + رقم .... + صفة

ex. It's 2.3 kilometres deep under the ground.
ex. It's 220 km long.

- لاحظ اختصارات وحدات القياس الآتية:

• metre = m	متر	• hour = h	ساعة
• kilometre = km	كيلومتر	• kilometre an hour = km/h	كيلومتر/ساعة

2 ➤ open

مكان (مبنى - محل - مطعم ....) /يفتح

- **open** (v) + مفعول

ex. They opened the bridge in 2002.

ex. Open the door, please.

إلى العمل

- **open** (v) (بدون مفعول)

ex. That bridge opened in May 2019.

(غير مغلق)

- **open** (adj)

ex. When I reached the shop, it was open.



Tapescript

Arabic Meaning

a. The Pyramid of El Castillo[1] in Chichen Itza is 30 metres high.
b. The Tahya Masr bridge[2] is about 540 metres long.
c. More than 37.500.000 people live in Tokyo, Japan.
d. The Leaning Tower of Pisa[3] is just under 850 years old.
e. The Gotthard Tunnel[4] in Switzerland 2.300 metres under the ground.

Tapescript

Arabic Meaning

١- كم طول
٢- كم العمق
٣- كم الارتفاع
٤- كم العمر
٥- كم العدد

1. - How long[1] is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?
   - It's 220 kilometres long.
2. - How deep[2] is Lake Baikal in Russia*?
   - It's 1.642 metres deep.
3. - How high[3] is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia?
   - It's 601 metres high.
4. - How old[4] is the Luxor Temple?
   - It's just under 3.500 years old.
5. - How many[5] people live in Cairo?
   - More than 20 million people.



Say it correctly

* Russia — ينطق المقطع الملون مثل صوت (شا).





Exercises on Lessons 1

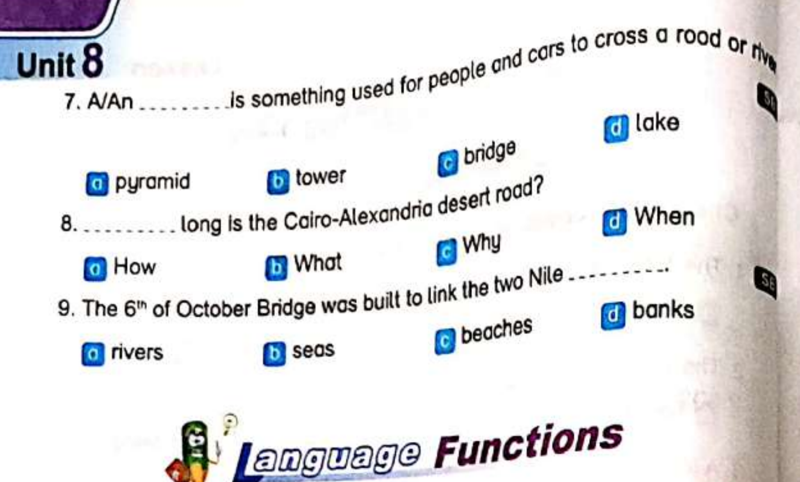
Check Up Exercises

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo. **WB**
   a) Tunnel b) Bridge c) City d) Tower
2. The Cairo .... is the tallest building in Egypt. **WB**
   a) Tower b) City c) Tunnel d) Bridge
3. A lot of tourists visit the Great .... of Giza every day.
   a) mountain b) Pyramid c) Cave d) Eye
4. I think Russia the biggest .... in the world.
   a) country b) century c) river d) mountain
5. The Channel .... goes under the sea between England and France. **WB**
   a) Tower b) Bridge c) Tunnel d) Building

Homework Exercises

1. Asyut is not a very big .... **WB**
   a) river b) tower c) city d) tunnel
2. A .... is a tall narrow building. **SB**
   a) tour b) tower c) pyramid d) mountain
3. The show was .... Everyone liked it.
   a) terrible b) bad c) worse d) amazing
4. Tourists from around the .... visit Egypt every year.
   a) circle b) tower c) building d) world
5. How .... is lake Baikal in Russia?
   a) many b) deep c) tall d) often
6. This .... goes under the river.
   a) tower b) tunnel c) lake d) canal



7. A/An .... is something used for people and cars to cross a road or rive[r].

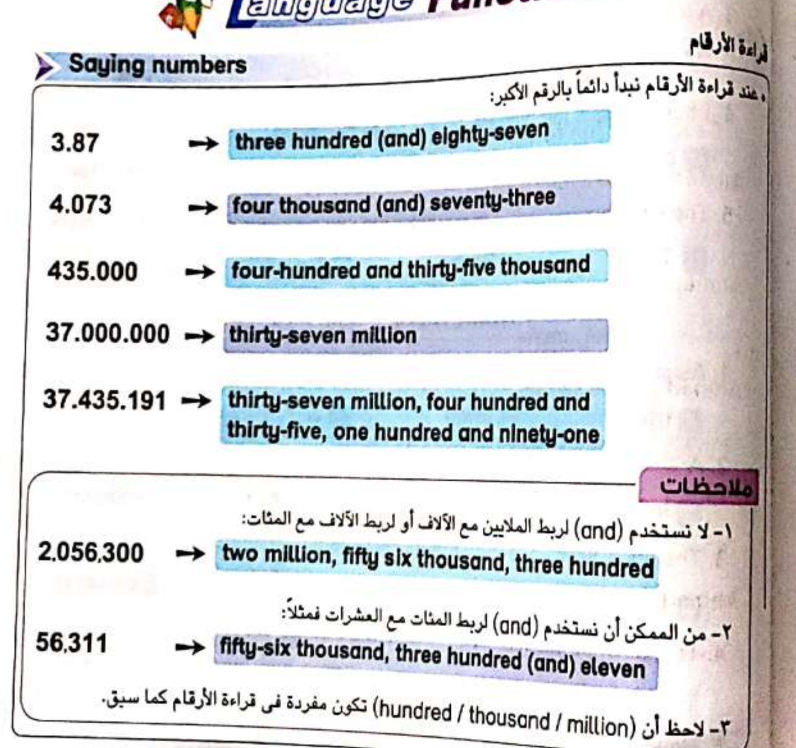
a pyramid b tower c bridge d lake

8. .... long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road?

a How b What c Why d When

9. The 6th of October Bridge was built to link the two Nile ....

a rivers b seas c beaches d banks



Language Functions

Saying numbers

قراءة الأرقام

• عند قراءة الأرقام نبدأ دائماً بالرقم الأكبر:

3.87 →	three hundred (and) eighty-seven
4.073 →	four thousand (and) seventy-three
435.000 →	four-hundred and thirty-five thousand
37.000.000 →	thirty-seven million
37.435.191 →	thirty-seven million, four hundred and thirty-five, one hundred and ninety-one

ملاحظات

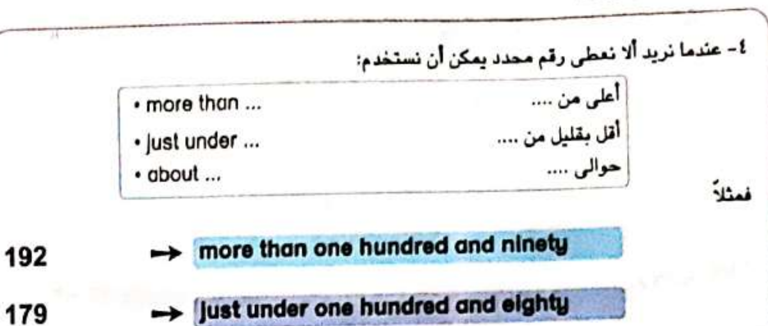
١- لا نستخدم (and) لربط الملايين مع الآلاف أو لربط الآلاف مع المئات:

2.056.300 → two million, fifty six thousand, three hundred

٢- من الممكن أن نستخدم (and) لربط المئات مع العشرات فمثلاً:

56.311 → fifty-six thousand, three hundred (and) eleven

٣- لاحظ أن (hundred / thousand / million) تكون مفردة فى قراءة الأرقام كما سبق.



٤- عندما نريد ألا نعطى رقم محدد يمكن أن نستخدم:

• more than ...	أعلى من ....
• just under ...	أقل بقليل من ....
• about ...	حوالى ....

فمثلاً

192 →	more than one hundred and ninety
179 →	just under one hundred and eighty
2.003 →	about two thousand

Exercises on Language Functions

➤ Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed : Yesterday we learned about some amazing places in Egypt.

Omar : ❶ .... are they?

Ahmed : The first place was the ❷ .... of Giza.

Omar : They are really tall. What is the ❸ .... place?

Ahmed : The second place is the library of Alexandria.

Omar : Wow! It is really fantastic. What other places did you learn about?

Ahmed : The Luxor ❹ .... It's amazing.

Omar : How ❺ .... is it?

Ahmed : I think it is about 3500 years old.

Omar : Oh, I will visit it next weekend.

"Key Vocabulary"

suspension bridge	جسر معلق	sunset	غروب الشمس
achievements	إنجازات	further	أبعد

Adjectives

crowded	مزدحم	wide	واسع / عريض
low	منخفض	high	عالى / مرتفع
narrow	ضيّق	beautiful	جميل
old	قديم	dangerous	خطير
tall	طويل / مرتفع	cheap	رخيص الثمن
empty	فارغ	ugly	قبيح
modern	حديث	safe	آمن
noisy	صاخب / ملئ بالضوضاء	expensive	غالى الثمن
quiet	هادئ		

Vocabulary

The Warraq Island	جزيرة الوراق	population	تعداد السكان
view	منظر	Etruscan shrew	زبابة (حيوان صغير يشبه الفأر)
ice skating	التزلج على الجليد (بحذاء خاص)	bee	نحلة
skiing*	التزلج على الجليد (بزلاجات طويلة)	capital city	عاصمة
mountain climbing	تسلق الجبال	traffic	حركة المرور
insect	حشرة	price	سعر

Famous places

The Qasr El Nil Bridge	جسر قصر النيل	The Red Pyramid	الهرم الأحمر (بدهشور)
The 6th October Bridge	جسر ٦ أكتوبر	The Shanghai Tower	برج شنغهاى (بالصين)
The Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة	The Al Hamra Tower	برج الحمراء (بالكويت)
Mount Everest	جبل إفرست	The Amazon	نهر الأمازون
Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كلمنجارو		

Countries and Cities

China	دولة الصين	Brazil	دولة البرازيل
Kuwait	دولة الكويت	Bangkok	مدينة بانكوك (عاصمة تايلاند)
Thailand*	دولة تايلاند	Brasilia	مدينة برازيليا (عاصمة البرازيل)

Words & Meanings

			Arabic Meaning
achievement	إنجاز	a result[1] to be proud of	١- نتيجة
sunset	غروب الشمس	the time when the sun disappears[2] from the sky at the end of the day	٢- يختفى ٣- سميك
suspension bridge	جسر معلق	a long bridge that has thick[3] metal wires[4] to hold it up	٤- كابلات معدنية

Expressions

Be careful	خذ الحذر
hit .... on a door	يصدم .... فى باب
make much noise	يسبب ضوضاء كثيرة
walk across a bridge	يمشى عبر جسر
the best time to + inf.	أفضل وقت لـ ...
6 kilometres away	على بعد ٦ كيلومتر
fly at ... km/h	تطير بسرعة ... كم/ساعة
look like	يشبه

Prepositions

crowded with	مزدحم بـ
go down a road	يسير فى طريق
swim across a river	يسبح عبر نهر
good for tourists	ملائم للسياح
at sunset	عند غروب الشمس
proud of	فخور بـ
on television	فى التلفاز

Word Differences

temple	معبد	tomb	مقبرة
population	تعداد السكان	pollution	التلوث
view	منظر	viewer	مشاهد/متفرج

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
build	يبنى	built	know	يعرف	knew
make	يصنع/يجعل	made	hit	يضرب/يصدم	hit



Language Notes

1 make

• make + مفعول + inf. يجعل

ex. The terrible weather made Ali stay home.

• make + مفعول + adjective يجعل

ex. Shanghai is crowded. That makes it noisy.

2 ➤ • tall • long

• tall طويل / عالى (تشير إلى الطول الرأسى للإنسان - المبانى - الشجر - الحيوانات)

ex. The Great Pyramid is really tall.

ex. There are three tall trees in my garden.

ex. The Cairo Tower is a tall building.

• long طويل (تشير إلى الطول الأفقى للمسافات والأشياء)

ex. That is the longest tunnel in the world.

ex. Sara has really long hair.

3 ➤ start + v - ing / to + inf

يأتي بعد الفعل (start) (to + inf.) أو (v-ing) بدون فارق في المعنى.

ex. When did you start doing / to do this job?

Tapescript

Voice

How much do you know about pyramids? Let's compare[1] two pyramids in Egypt. The Great Pyramid of Giza is 146 metres tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid, which is 105 metres tall. But the Red Pyramid is further[2] away from the centre of Cairo, so it's less crowded with visitors[3]. Because it's less crowded, it's also quieter.

Now lets compare two very tall buildings. The Shanghai Tower in China[4] is 632 metres tall. The tower first opened in 2015. The Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait[5] is 412.6 metres tall. The building first opened in 2011. So the Shanghai Tower is taller and more modern[6] than the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait.

Finally, we're going to compare two capital cities[7]. Bangkok became the capital of Thailand[8]* about 600 years ago, so it's much older than Brasilia[9]. Brasilia is a modern city. The Brazilians built it in 1960. More people live in Bangkok than Brasilia. The population[10] of Bangkok is more than 10 million. The population of Brasilia is about four and a half million.

So, how did you do? Did you get the answers correct?

Arabic Meaning

١- يقارن
٢- أبعد
٣- زوار
٤- الصين
٥- الكويت
٦- حديث
٧- عواصم
٨- تايلاند
٩- برازيليا
١٠- تعداد السكان

Reading



The Tahya Masr Bridge

The world's widest[1] suspension bridge[2] opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.

More than 4.000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months.

The bridge crosses[3] the Nile's Warraq Island[4]. More than 100.000 people live on the island.

Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor[5], so you can see the river under your feet[6]. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset[7], for a beautiful view[8] of the city.

Arabic Meaning

١- أعرض - الأكثر اتساعًا
٢- جسر معلق
٣- يعبر
٤- جزيرة الوراق
٥- أرضية زجاجية
٦- تحت قدميك
٧- غروب الشمس
٨- منظر

Reading





You probably[1] know that whales[2] are the biggest animals in the world, but did you know that they are also the noisiest? A whale can hear[3] another whale 160 km away. Did you know that the fastest[4] animal in the world is a bird? It can fly at more than 300 km/h. Insects[5] are the most dangerous animals in the world. They make more people ill than any other animal.

Finally, the smallest land animal is the Etruscan shrew[6]. It looks like[7] a mouse and is the same size as a bee[8]!

Arabic Meaning

١- من المحتمل
٢- حيتان
٣- يسمع
٤- الأسرع
٥- حشرات
٦- الزَّبابة (حيوان يشبه الفأر)
٧- يشبه
٨- نحلة

Say it correctly

* skiing ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (ee) في كلمة (agree).

Tapescript

Girl 1	Which subject do you think is more difficult, English or Science?
Girl 2	In my opinion, science is the most difficult of all.
Boy 1	I think Dahab has the most beautiful beach in Egypt. Do you?
Boy 2	I agree. It's also the least crowded.
Girl 3	What's your opinion of ice skating[1]? Do you agree that it's more dangerous than mountain climbing[2]?
Girl 4	I'm afraid[3], I don't agree.
Boy 3	What do you think about the new TV show?
Boy 4	I think it's the funniest show on TV right now.

Arabic Meaning

١- التزلج على الجليد
٢- تسلق الجبال
٣- اخشى انى

Exercises on Lessons 2 & 3

Check Up Exercises

➤ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That book costs only two pounds. It is really ....
   a) expensive b) cheap c) dangerous d) safe
2. Our school gave prizes to some students for their ....
   a) dreams b) achievements c) bridges d) floors
3. No one agreed to buy the dog because it was really ....
   a) beautiful b) narrow c) ugly d) wide
4. The best time to cross the Tahya Masr Bridge is at ....
   a) sunscreen b) sunblock c) sunflower d) sunset
5. All of us like the .... view of the Nile.
   a) beautiful b) narrow c) cheap d) ugly

Homework Exercises

➤ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The world's widest .... bridge opened in Cairo in May 2019.
   a) running b) suspension c) swimming d) flying
2. I can't buy that mobile. It is really ....
   a) safe b) expensive c) beautiful d) empty
3. We went ice .... in Mall of Egypt yesterday.
   a) skating b) climbing c) drinking d) studying
4. .... are the most dangerous animals in the world.
   a) Subjects b) Islands c) Bridges d) Insects
5. I'm .... of being Egyptian.
   a) careful b) empty c) wide d) proud
6. It is .... to climb up the ladder very quickly.
   a) safe b) modern c) old d) dangerous
7. I think mountain .... is the most dangerous sport.
   a) moving b) climbing c) spending d) building
8. The tourists admired the .... of the Nile when they went on the bridge.
   a) cave b) view c) taste d) viewer
9. A .... is a black and yellow insect that makes honey.
   a) horse b) goat c) bee d) bear
10. .... is the time when the sun disappears from the sky at the end of the day.
   a) Sunset b) Sun cream c) Sunglasses d) Sun



Grammar

Comparative and Superlative adjectives صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

• تنقسم الصفات الى قصيرة وطويلة.

من أمثلة الصفات القصيرة

big	كبير	fast	سريع	tall	طويل
high	عالي	long	طويل	nice	لطيف

من أمثلة الصفات الطويلة

popular	شائع	expensive	غالي الثمن	useful	مفيد
crowded	مزدحم	difficult	صعب	modern	حديث

• نستخدم صيغة المقارنة **Comparative** للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.

• نستخدم صيغة التفضيل **Superlative** للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.

• تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلي:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "high"	صفة + er + than "higher than" ex. Mount Kilimanjaro is higher than that mountain.	the + صفة + est "the highest" ex. Mount Everst is the highest mountain.
long adjective "modern"	أكثر / أقل more / less + صفة + than ex. My city is more modern than your city.	الأكثر / الأقل The most / least + صفة ex. Ali's city is the most modern one.

تكوين المقارنة / التفضيل

• إذا انتهت الصفة بـــ y + حرف ساكن تحول y إلى i نضيف (er) أو (est):

noisy ⇨ noisier than ⇨ the noisiest / busy ⇨ busier than ⇨ the busiest

• إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقة حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير؛

big ⇨ bigger than ⇨ the biggest / thin ⇨ thinner than ⇨ the thinnest

ملاحظات

١- هناك صفات شاذة تحفظ كما هي:

Adjective		Comparative	Superlative
good	جيد	better than	the best
bad	سيء	worse than	the worst
many	كثير (للعدد)	more than	the most
much	كثير (للكمية)	more than	the most
little	قليل (للكمية)	less than	the least
far	بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

٢- من الممكن أن نستغنى عن **than** عند المقارنة وتفهم من المعنى:

ex. Mona is clever but Habiba is cleverer (than her).

٣- نستخدم حرف الجر **in** بعد صفات التفضيل إذا تلاها اسم مفرد يدل على مكان أو اسم يدل على مجموعة (team / class ...):

(SB p.17)

ex. My sister is the tallest in our family.

ex. The Nile is the longest river in the world.

- بينما نستخدم حرف الجر **of** إذا تلاها اسم جمع:

ex. Ahmed is the cleverest of all his friends.

ex. Some people think maths is the most difficult of all. (SB p.17)

Exercises on Lessons 2 & 3

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mount Everest is .... than Mount Kilimanjaro. SB
   a highest b high c as high d higher
2. Look at the two pyramids. Which one is ....?
   a tallest b taller c the tallest d as tall
3. Old cars are usually .... than modern cars. WB
   a noisier b noisy c noisiest d as noisy
4. Giza is .... than Tanta.
   a big b bigger c biggest d the biggest
5. The Nile river is longer .... the Amazon. SB
   a as b most c more d than

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Cairo is **most** crowded than Aswan. WB (............)
2. An elephant is **big** than a camel. SB (............)
3. The red car is **most** expensive one. (............)
4. Ahmed is **clever** student in my class. (............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friend lives .... the school than me. SB
   a nearest b nearer c near d most nearer
2. Who is .... person in your family?
   a tallest b as tall c the taller d the tallest
3. A train is .... than a bus. WB
   a faster b fastest c as fast d the fastest
4. I'm .... now than yesterday.
   a as good b good c better d the best
5. My dad thinks English is .... than French.
   a difficult b more difficult c as difficult d the most difficult
6. My cousins felt .... after they moved to a new flat. WB
   a happiest b happier c more happier d as happy
7. The tourists went to .... restaurant in the city.
   a good b the better c the best d as good
8. Is Doaa .... than her sister?
   a old b as old c the oldest d older
9. This is .... building in the street.
   a biggest b the biggest c bigger d as big
10. Ali is tall, but Rami is .... WB
    a taller b tallest c tall d as tall

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The mountain was **more high** than we thought. WB (............)
2. This is the **happy** day in my life. (............)
3. Which tunnel is **longest**, this one or that one? (............)
4. Cheese is **badder** for you than fruit. WB (............)

3 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان

"Amazing places around the world"

....

....

Lessons 4, 5 & 6

"Key Vocabulary"

treasures	كنوز	entrance	مدخل
space	فراغ/مساحة/فضاء	column	عمود
competition	مسابقة/منافسة	fountain	نافورة
collection	مجموعة		

Historical places & objects

The Valley of the Kings	وادى الملوك	The Rosetta Stone	حجر رشيد
The Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك	Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر
The Hypostyle Hall	قاعة الأعمدة	The British Museum	المتحف البريطانى
The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)	المتحف المصرى الكبير	The Great Court	الساحة الكبرى (بالمتحف البريطانى)
Habu Temple	معبد هابو		

Vocabulary

valuable	قيّم / ثمين	holiday places	أماكن الإجازات
display	عرض	public	عام (للجميع)
however	مع ذلك	hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية
objects	أشياء	covered	مُغطى
part	جزء	Europe	قارة أوروبا
century	قرن (١٠٠ سنة)	plant	نبات
website	موقع (على الإنترنت)	too	أيضًا
city centre	وسط المدينة	motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)
review	مراجعة نقدية	design (ed)	يصمم / تصميم
guide book	دليل إرشاد (للسياح)	welcome (d)	يرحب بـ
square metre	متر مربع	complete (d)	يكمل
playground	ملعب	expect (ed)	يتوقع
car park	موقف سيارات	allow (ed)	يسمح
Germany	دولة ألمانيا	agree (d)	يوافق
TV show	عرض تليفزيونى	disagree (d)	لا يوافق

Words & Meanings

Word	Meaning	Arabic Meaning
entrance مدخل	the way into a building, such as a door or gate[1]	١-بوابة
collection مجموعة	a quantity[2] of valuable metals, jewels[3] etc.	٢-مقدار ٣-مجوهرات
competition مسابقة	an event[4], often followed by a prize, in which people try to be the best at something	٤-حدث (هام) ٥-بناء - مبنى
column عمود	a tall structure[5] that holds up part of a building	

Expressions

have space for	به مساحة لـ
have a holiday	يقضى إجازة
have the same opinion	له نفس الرأى.
gets busier	يصبح أكثر ازدحامًا
spend (time)	يقضى وقت
do a sport	يلعب رياضة

Prepositions

at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
on display	معروض / فى العرض
look after	يعتنى بـ / يحافظ على
special about	مميز بخصوص
during the day	أثناء النهار
similar to	مشابه لـ
for longer	لوقت أطول
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)
for the first time	لأول مرة
the same as	نفس الشيء مثل

Word Differences

century	قرن (١٠٠ سنة)	country	بلد / قطر
café	مقهى (مكان)	coffee	قهوة (مشروب)
plant	نبات	planet	كوكب

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
take	يأخذ / يستغرق	took	understand	يفهم	understood
put	يضع	put	spend	يقضى / ينفق	spent



1 ➤ much + comparative adjectives

تأتي much قبل صفات المقارنة لتحديد مقدارها:

ex. Al Azhar park is much larger than that park.

ex. Habiba is much more beautiful than Amany.

2 ➤ allow   let

- **allow + object + to + inf.**

ex. My dad always allows me to use his car.

- **let + object + inf.**

ex. My dad always lets me use his car.

Reading



The Grand Egyptian Museum



The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable[1] treasures[2] on display[3]. However, the museum did not have space[4] for 100,000 other objects[5]. In 2002, there was a competition[6] to design[7] a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed[8] its first visitors in 2019. It is further[9] from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to[10] look after the objects really well.

One of the most beautiful parts[11] of the museum is the entrance[12], with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.

Moving these objects from the old museum in Tahrir to complete the Grand Egyptian Museum is not easy. It is expected[13] to take many years of hard work.

Arabic Meaning

١- قيم
٢- كنوز
٣- معروض
٤- مساحة - فراغ
٥- أشياء
٦- مسابقة
٧- يصمم
٨- رحب بـ
٩- أبعد
١٠- قادر على
١١- أجزاء
١٢- مدخل
١٣- متوقع

Reading



A website review

We had a wonderful holiday[1] in Egypt.
These are my opinions[2] about three of the most interesting places[3].

The Valley of the Kings in Luxor is one of the most popular[4] places for tourists to visit. We went early because that is the quietest[5] time My brother said, "This is fantastic. I am sure it gets busier[6] later on[7] during[8] the day".



The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple[9]. My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall[10], a 5000-square metre[11] "room" with 134 stone columns*[12]. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.

In my opinion the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple[13]. It has columns similar to[14] those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.

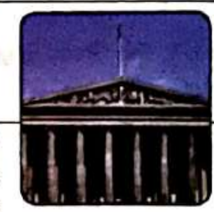
Arabic Meaning

١- إجازة
٢- آراء
٣- أماكن
٤- مشهور / محبوب
٥- الأهدأ
٦- أكثر ازدحاما
٧- فيما بعد
٨- أثناء
٩- معبد الكرنك
١٠- قاعة
١١- متر مربع
١٢- أعمدة حجرية
١٣- معبد هابو
١٤- مشابه لـ

Reading



The British Museum



The British Museum in London is the oldest public museum[1] in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects[2]. About six million visitors go there every year.

The museum has the biggest collection[3] of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the Rosetta Stone[4]. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics*[5] for the first time.

In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the Great Court[6]. Its big glass room makes it the largest covered[7] square in Europe*[8]. It opened in 2000 so it is also the most modern part of the museum.

Arabic Meaning

١- متحف عام
٢- أشياء
٣- مجموعة
٤- حجر رشيد
٥- اللغة الهيروغليفية
٦- الساحة الكبرى
٧- مغطى
٨- قارة أوروبا



* hieroglyphics
ينطق حرفي (ie) من هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (y) في كلمة (by) مع نطق صوت (g) مثل صوت (ج).

* column
لا ينطق حرف (n) في هذه الكلمة .

Unit 8

Reading



Al Azhar Park



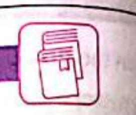
Al Azhar Park[1] is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo. It is much larger than the small park near my house.

That park has a few trees and plants and I enjoy going there after school. You can spend[2] an hour or two in that park, but you can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park. The trees there are taller and it has more plants. It also has fountains[3], a lake[4] and cafés, too. I like going there because there is space for all our family to have a big picnic at the weekends! My sister always says, "I love it here."

Arabic Meaning

١- حديقة الأزهر
٢- يقضي
٣- نافورات
٤- بحيرة

Exercises on Lessons 4, 5 & 6



Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Grand Egyptain Museum has .... for a lot of objects.
   a) house b) entrance c) fountain d) space
2. People found a lot of .... inside that ancient building.
   a) trains b) treasures c) tricks d) trams
3. The tourists took a lot of photos at the museum ....
   a) beach b) bank c) website d) entrance
4. How many ancient objects were .... display in the museum?
   a) at b) on c) of d) about
5. The tourists stopped at the water .... to take some photos.
   a) storm b) mountain c) volcano d) fountain

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That museum has a lot of .... objects. They are really wonderful.
   a) terrible b) bad c) valuable d) worse

2. I always leave my car in a nearby car ....
   a) bark b) park c) palm d) poem
3. My book is similar .... yours.
   a) at b) of c) on d) to
4. There were more than 160.000 of Egypt's most valuable .... in the museum. SB
   a) spaces b) walls c) subjects d) treasures
5. I couldn't put the beds in my room as there wasn't enough .... there.
   a) spice b) space c) science d) sky
6. Ali won the first prize in yesterday's ....
   a) competition b) collection c) fountain d) column
7. The Karnak Temple has a lot of stone ....
   a) websites b) guides c) columns d) guards
8. Mr Alaa has a great .... of stories.
   a) collection b) entrance c) stone d) park
9. The .... of the Kings in Luxor is one of the most popular places. SB
   a) Valley b) Nile c) Cave d) River
10. The British Museum in London is the oldest .... museum in the world. WB
    a) careless b) helpful c) public d) ugly



Grammar

and / but / because

١- تستخدم (and) للربط بين أفكار متشابهة:

ex. He is fast **and** always wins races.

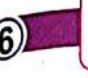
٢- تستخدم (but) للربط بين أفكار متناقضة:

ex. He is fat **but** he always wins races.

٣- تستخدم (because) للربط بين السبب والنتيجة:

ex. He couldn't win **because** he was tired.

Exercises on Lessons 4, 5 & 6



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like this hotel .... it is not very modern.
   a) because b) so c) although d) but
2. We went to the shop for some bread, ... the shop was closed.
   a) although b) but c) because d) so
3. Ahmed did not come to school yesterday .... he was ill.
   a) because b) so c) although d) but
4. My sister didn't like the book, ... I loved it.
   a) because b) so c) although d) but

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The computer was very expensive **because** I bought it. WB (........)
2. He was poor **and** he was happy. SB (........)
3. I didn't like the music **and** it was too loud. (........)

3 Write a paragraph of about 80 words on:

يجاب عنه قبل الامتحان

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Language Functions

1 Asking for and giving opinions

طلب واعطاء الآراء

• نسأل عن الرأي بـ:

- Which ... do you think is more ..., ... or ...? — أى ... تعتقد أنها أكثر ...، ... أم ...؟
- I think ... is the most ... Do you? — أعتقد أن ... هى الأكثر ... هل توافقنى؟
- What is your opinion of ...? Do you agree that it's more ... than ...? — ما رأيك فى ...؟ هل تتفق أنه أكثر ... من ...؟

• لاعطاء الرأى:

- In my opinion, ... is the ... of all. — في رأيى، أعتقد أن ... هى الأكثر ... .
- I agree. It's also ... . — اتفق معك و، وهى أيضًا ... .
- I'm afraid I ... . — يؤسفنى أننى ... .
- I think it is ... right now. — أعتقد أنه ... الآن.

2 Responding

الرد

Agreeing	Disagreeing
- That's right.	- I don't feel the same as you about that.
- I think so.	- You are WRONG!
- I agree (with you).	- I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion.
	- What? No way!
	- That's impossible.
	- I don't think so.
	- I disagree (with you).

- للتعبير عن عدم التأكد نستخدم:

- I'm not sure about that.

Exercises on Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue: SB

Maram : What is the best book you can think of?

Ahmed : In my (1) ...., it's Gulliver's Travels.

Maram : Why?

Ahmed : (2) .... it is really interesting.

Maram : I'm sorry, but I don't have the same opinion.

Ahmed : Why?
Maram : I think Robinson Crusoe is ❸ .... interesting
Ahmed : What? No ❹ ....
Maram : Anyway, both are great books.
Ahmed : I agree ❺ .... you

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. The Pyramids at Giza are easier .... tourists to visit than the Red Pyramid
   a) to b) for c) about d) out
2. Mona has got .... money than Soha.
   a) fewer b) fewest c) little d) less
3. We visited Egypt's .... places last year.
   a) best b) the best c) more d) less
4. Pizza is worse .... you than cheese.
   a) off b) in c) at d) for

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He is so weak. Although, he can carry heavy objects. (........)
2. The Hypostyle Hall is 5.000 circle metres long. (........)



Writing Skills

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

❶ Amazing places around the world

We can visit many amazing places around the world. The Pyramids of Giza are fantastic. They are very tall. They are always crowded with visitors. The Shanghai Tower in China is another amazing place. It is very high, too. It is really modern. Bangkok, the capital of Thailand, is a very old city. A lot of people live there. Mount Everest is also an amazing place. It is the highest mountain the world. I hope I will visit these places when I grow up.

❷ The most beautiful place you know

The British Museum in London is the most beautiful place I know. It is the oldest public museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year. The museum has a beautiful collection of Egyptian objects. One of its objects is the Rosetta Stone. This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. In my opinion, the best part of the museum is the Great Court.

❸ The Grand Egyptian Museum (An important building in Egypt)

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is a great museum. It welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. It has a lot of space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue there is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.

General Exercises on Unit 8



1 Complete the following dialogue: SB

Omar : Welcome to Egypt. Is this your first visit to Egypt?
Tourist : Thanks. Yes, it my first time to be here.
Omar : ❶ .... places will you visit here?
Tourist : I'll visit the Karnak ❷ ....
Omar : Wow! What other places will you visit?
Tourist : I'll visit the Grand ❸ .... Museum.

Omar : Great. How ④ .... will you stay in Egypt?

Tourist : I'll stay for one week.

Omar : Have a nice time.

Tourist : ⑤ .... you.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB

1. The Nile is quite .... in Cairo.
   a wide b cheap c modern d old

WB

2. Let's buy green apples because the red apples are ....
   a more expensive b as expensive c expensive than d the expensive

WB

3. The market is always very busy at this time. Don't go now or it will be very ....
   a empty b quiet c crowded d wide

4. London is .... than Brasilia.
   a modern b more modern c the most modern d as modern

5. What is the .... place in Egypt?
   a most popular b more popular c as popular d popular than

6. When my uncle dies, it was the .... day in my life.
   a bad b as bad c worse d worst

SB

7. The Grand Egyptian Museum is .... from the city centre than the old museum.
   a bigger b further c deeper d wider

8. A: Where did you buy that laptop?
   B: From a famous shop in the city ....
   a town b screen c centre d circle

9. I like working in my office because it is always ....
   a noisy b quiet c quite d narrow

10. That cover .... your mobile from dust.
    a stops b produces c protects d practises

11. I said it was a very good film but Hassan ....
    a agreed b liked c disagreed d admired

12. That bird is the fastest! It can fly .... more than 300 km/h.
    a on b at c about d on

13. A: What does the man you saw look ....?
    B: He is tall with black hair.
    a like b as c dislike d hate

SB

14. What do you think .... the new TV show?
    a off b about c at d for

15. I don't feel the .... as you about that new car.
    a same b some c like d as

16. Ali was too tired and couldn't go .... into the city.
    a older b wider c narrower d further

WB

17. We need to buy some more water. This bottle is ....
    a full b empty c crowded d low

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Osman is **strong** than Hussein. WB (..............)
2. Samir is **most careful** than Ali. (..............)
3. Amir was **the better** student in my school. (..............)
4. He walked **far** than he needed. (..............)
5. I watched a nice TV show **at** television. (..............)
6. A: Can we go out today?
   B: No **road**! I'm too busy. (..............)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

سحاب عنه قبل الامتحان

WB

"The most beautiful place you know"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



A Listening

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The oldest museum in Cairo opened in ....
   a 1853 b 1835 c 1385 d 1583
2. There were a lot of .... there
   a trees b treasures c truks d trains
3. I didn't have .... for many objects.
   a science b space c sports d skies
4. It was a .... museum.
   a bad b terrible c wonderful d careless

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar : Yesterday we visited the Grand Egyptian Museum.
Hossam: Wow! ❶ .... is it?
Omar : It is only two kilometres from the Pyramids.
Hossam: When did it open?
Omar : It opened ❷ .... 2019.
Hossam: Was it ❸ ....?
Omar : Yes, it was really interesting.
Hossam: What did you ❹ .... there.
Omar : We saw a lot of ancient ❺ ....
Hossam: I will go there next week.

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

The Kings of the Ancient Egyptians were very powerful. They built tombs to be buried in. They thought that the King was a god. They didn't wear many clothes. Men wore a kind of short skirt, but women used to wear long dresses.

Women didn't go out to work. <u>They</u> stayed at home. Most men were farmers. Their

children did the same jobs as their parents. Girls stayed at home with their mothers. They learned to look after their families. Boys worked with their fathers. They only went to school if they wanted to be learn to do new jobs. Children used to run, jump and play games. Their toys were made of wood.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Where were the Kings of the ancient Egyptians buried?
....
2- Why did the girls stay at home?
....
3- Would you like to live in ancient Egypt? Why / Why not?
....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Most Men in ancient Egypt wore ....
   e caps f blouses g trainers h skirts
5- The Ancient Egyptians thought that their King was a ....
   a father b god c prince d leader
6- The underlined word "**They**" refers to ....
   a sons b children c men d women

C Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Be careful you don't hit your head on the door. It's very .... (WB)
   a empty b low c noisy d wide
2. Only people and bikes can go down that road because it is very .... (WB)
   a narrow b wide c big d long
3. The teacher was angry because the students were very .... (WB)
   a quiet b noisy c narrow d low
4. Ice skating is .... than skiing. (SB)
   a noisier b noisy c noisiest d as noisy
5. People use .... to cross roads or rivers.
   a planes b bridges c rockets d towers
6. The museum is usually .... on a Saturday than a Sunday. (WB)
   a crowded b more crowded c most crowded d as crowded

7. There is not much noise in that village. It's really ....
   a quiet b quit c noisy d loud
8. I think the blue dress is .... than the red dress.
   a nice b nicer c nicest d as nice
9. .... is the time when the sun disappears from the sky at the end of the day.
   a Sunlight b Sunscreen c Sunset d Sun cream
10. The man couldn't carry the box .... it was too heavy.
   a but b however c because d although

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

SB

1. Tennis is <u>little</u> dangerous than football. (.........)
2. Hassan is good, but Kamal is <u>best</u>. (.........)
3. This is the <u>more</u> book in the library. (.........)
4. Who is <u>the more beautiful</u> girl in the party? (.........)

D Writing

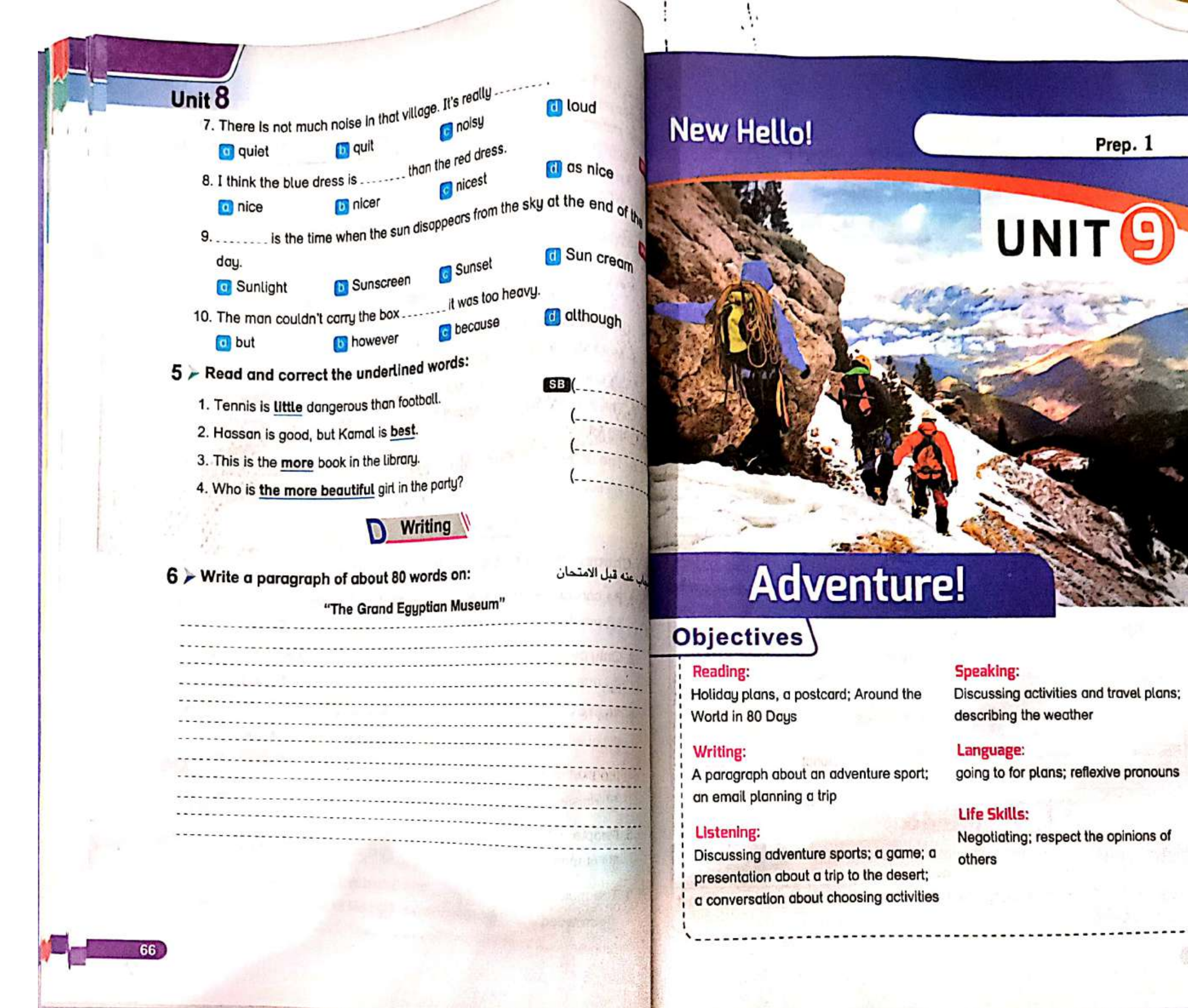
6 Write a paragraph of about 80 words on:

عنه قبل الامتحان

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

UNIT 9



Adventure!

Objectives

Reading: Holiday plans, a postcard; Around the World in 80 Days

Writing: A paragraph about an adventure sport; an email planning a trip

Listening: Discussing adventure sports; a game; a presentation about a trip to the desert; a conversation about choosing activities

Speaking: Discussing activities and travel plans; describing the weather

Language: going to for plans; reflexive pronouns

Life Skills: Negotiating; respect the opinions of others

"Key Vocabulary"

Water sports

diving	الغطس
kayaking	التجديف
sailing	الإبحار
windsurfing	التزلج على الماء بواسطة الرياح

Mountain sports

rock climbing	تسلق الصخور
mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات فى الجبال
trekking	القيام برحلات على الأقدام
zip lining	الانزلاق بالحبل

Vocabulary

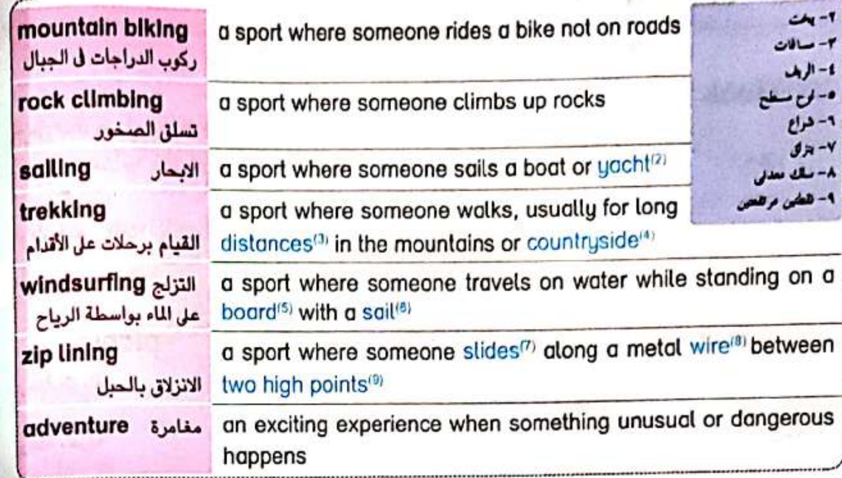
adventure	مغامرة	No way!	مستحيل!
adventure sports	رياضات المغامرات	quiet	هادئ
scary	مخيف	cook (ed)	يطهو
fun (adj / n)	ممتع / متعة	look (ed)	يبدو
How high...?	كم ارتفاع...؟	walk (ed)	يسير
wind	رياح	try (ied)	يجرب «شيء» / يحاول
article	مقال		

Places in Sinai

Ras Shetan رأس شيطان «مخيم بدوى فى جنوب سيناء»	Mount Catherine جبل كاترين «فى سيناء»	Dahab مدينة دهب

Words & Meanings

		Arabic Meaning
diving الغطس	a sport where a swimmer goes deep under water to look at fish, sea animals etc.	١-
kayaking التجديف	a sport or hobby where one or two people travel in a narrow[1] boat	



mountain biking ركوب الدراجات فى الجبال	a sport where someone rides a bike not on roads	٢- يخت ٣- مسافات ٤- الريف ٥- لوح سطح ٦- شراع ٧- ينزلق ٨- سلك معدنى ٩- نقطتين مرتفعتين
rock climbing تسلق الصخور	a sport where someone climbs up rocks	
sailing الإبحار	a sport where someone sails a boat or yacht[2]	
trekking القيام برحلات على الأقدام	a sport where someone walks, usually for long distances[3] in the mountains or countryside[4]	
windsurfing التزلج على الماء بواسطة الرياح	a sport where someone travels on water while standing on a board[5] with a sail[6]	
zip lining الانزلاق بالحبل	a sport where someone slides[7] along a metal wire[8] between two high points[9]	
adventure مغامرة	an exciting experience when something unusual or dangerous happens	

Expressions

look scary	يبدو مخيفًا
try + sport	يجرب ممارسة رياضة
go diving	يذهب للغوص
go windsurfing	يتزلج على الماء بواسطة الرياح
travel home	يسافر عائدًا للوطن / للمنزل

Prepositions

go down rivers	يبحر عبر الأنهار
for two days	لمدة يومان
across the desert	عَـبْـرَ الصحراء
under the water	تحت الماء
start / finish in...	نبدأ / تنتهى «الرحلة» فى
on the ground	على الأرض

Word Differences

dive	يغطس	drive	يقود (سيارة)
sail	يبحر	sell	يبيع
fun	ممتع / متعة	funny	مضحك
quiet	هادئ	quite	تمامًا / جدًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
go	يذهب	went	wear	يرتدى	wore

Language Notes

1 ➤ • look

من المعروف أن فعل look يأتى بمعنى ينظر ويأتى معه حروف جر تغير معناه مثل:

look for	يبحث عن	look up	يبحث عن معلومات
look after	يعتنى بـ	look like	يشبه

يأتى فعل look أيضًا بمعنى يبدو ويتبعه صفة كما ورد فى الوحدة

look fun	يبدو ممتعًا	look scary	يبدو مخيفًا

ex. Eman and Hossam think that mountain biking looks scary.

2 ➤ • journey • voyage • flight • trip • picnic

- **journey** — رحلة طويلة
  ex. The journey to Luxor takes 9 hours.
- **voyage** — رحلة بحرية
  ex. The captain took us on a quiet voyage.
- **flight** — رحلة جوية
  ex. The flight took two hours on a Boing plane.
- **trip** — رحلة قصيرة (للاستمتاع أو لغرض معين)
  ex. My father went on a business trip to Paris.
- **picnic** — نزهة (خلوية) فى الهواء الطلق
  ex. We had a picnic in the park yesterday.

Tapescript

Imad : What are you looking at, Hassan?
Hassan : Hi Imad. It's an article[1] about adventure sports[2] in Egypt.
Imad : Oh yes! Last year, I went diving[3] in the Red Sea. It was amazing!
Hassan : I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing[4], too.
Imad : What about rock climbing*[5]?
Hassan : I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous, but I like trekking[6] in the mountains.
Imad : Me, too! I like the mountains. I'm going to visit Sinai with my family in the holidays.
Hassan : Are you going to try mountain biking[7], Imad?
Imad : No, I'm not going to do anything scary[8]. It is very difficult to ride a bike in the mountains.
Hassan : I think you're right. Zip lining[9] looks scary, too.
Imad : I think it looks fun[10]! I'm going to try it one day!
Hassan : Really? No way[11]!

Arabic Meaning
١- مقال
٢- رياضات المغامرات
٣- الغطس
٤- التزلج على الماء بواسطة الرياح
٥- تسلق الصخور
٦- رحلات على الأقدام
٧- ركوب الدراجات فى الجبال
٨- مخيف
٩- الانزلاق بالحبل
١٠- ممتع
١١- مستحيل

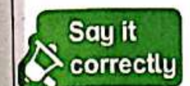
Say it correctly
* climbing — ينطق الحرف الثالث (i) فى هذه الكلمة مثله فى كلمة line. لا ينطق حرف (b).



Tapescript

Mustafa : I'm going to go to the mountains.
Hazem : OK. Are you going to go trekking?
Mustafa : No, I'm not.
Hazem : Are you going to go rock climbing?
Mustafa : Yes, I am!
Hazem : Your bag is ....D.
Mustafa : That's right.
Hazem : My turn. I'm going to the beach.
Mustafa : Are you going to go kayaking*[1]?
Hazem : No, I'm not.
Mustafa : Are you going to go diving?
Hazem : Yes, I am.
Mustafa : Your bag is ... B.

Arabic Meaning
١- التجديف



Say it correctly
* kayaking — ينطق المقطع (kay) مثل (ki) فى كلمة (kite).

Reading





New Message

Hi Eman!

I'm in Dahab with my family. There's so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going to go trekking in the mountains. I'm not going to try rock climbing. It's too scary.

Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing in the morning and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving! We're not going to go kayaking. There is no time!

Love, Reem

Send

Exercises on Lesson 1

Check Up Exercises

Practice Test

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We are going to go .... across Sinai.
   a trekking b tricking c fishing d swimming
2. You need a special bike to try ....
   a Rock climbing b Mountain biking c Kayaking d Trekking
3. All you need to do .... is a boat and some wind! WB
   a trekking b diving c kayaking d zip lining
4. We can't go .... today because there is no wind! WB
   a trekking b diving c zip lining d windsurfing
5. This film .... scary. I don't like it.
   a likes b sees c looks d watches

Homework Exercises

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Rock .... is a dangerous sport.
   a diving b kayaking c climbing d sailing
2. I love .... because I'm good at swimming under the water. WB
   a diving b zip lining c trekking d sailing
3. In ...., you start really high, but you finish on the ground. WB
   a kayaking b zip lining c trekking d diving
4. I love ...., going down rivers. It's very quiet! WB
   a sailing b diving c trekking d zip lining
5. Some people like to .... dangerous sports.
   a wear b go c spend d try
6. We sometimes go .... for two days or more usually across the desert. WB
   a windsurfing b sailing c trekking d diving
7. They took four days to cross the desert. It was a difficult .... WB
   a journey b voyage c flight d picnic
8. The weather was nice yesterday. We took a boat and went .... the river.
   a up b under c down d about
9. I always go to the sea; I'm good .... swimming.
   a at b to c of d for
10. Diving in the Red Sea is a great ....
    a fan b funny c fun d fair

Grammar

Future forms صيغ المستقبل
"(be) going to" and "will"

1 (be) going to

Form التكوين

I → am
He/ She/ It → is
We/ You/ They → are
} + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل....

- لاحظ الاختصارات: am = 'm / is = 's / are = 're

Usage الاستخدام

• نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن الآتي:

1- **Predictions based on evidence** تنبؤ فى المستقبل مع وجود دليل
ex. She's studying hard. She is going to pass her exams easily.

2- **Future plans** خطط مستقبلية
ex. I am ('m) going to visit Saini.

3- **Decisions** قرارات مسبقة
ex. I am going to do the homework.

4- **Intentions** نوايا
ex. I'm going to buy a jacket next week.

- نستخدم (be) going to مع الكلمات plan - decide - intend

Negative النفى

• للنفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

فاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + inf....

- لاحظ الاختصارات: am not = 'm not / is not = isn't / are not = aren't

Question السؤال

• للاستفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

(كلمة استفهام) am / is / are + فاعل + going to + inf. ......?

ex. Are you going to try rock climbing?
- Yes, I am. - No, I am not ('m not).

2 will ('ll) / will not (won't)

Form / التكوين

كل الضمائر + will ('ll) + inf...

ex. I think it will ('ll) be very cold next winter.

Usage / الاستخدام

• نستخدم (will) للتعبير عن الآتى:

١- تنبؤ بشئ فى المستقبل بدون دليل

1- Predictions without evidence

ex. I think it will be hot tomorrow.

٢- القرارات السريعة

2- Quick decisions

ex. I'm tired; I think I'll go to bed.

٣- العروض والطلبات (offer) (request)

3- Offers and requests

ex. I will help you with your homework.

ex. Will you send us some photos?

لاحظ الآتى:

• تستخدم الكلمات الآتية مع (will) فى المستقبل للتعبير عن تنبؤ بدون دليل:

think / believe/ hope / (be) sure / perhaps / probably / possibly / expect

ex. We will **probably** visit Ali tomorrow.

ex. I **think** that Maha will arrive soon.

Negative / النفى

• للنفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

كل الضمائر + will not (won't) + inf....

ex. I will not (won't) come with you. I'm busy.

Question / السؤال

• للسؤال نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

(كلمة استفهام) will + فاعل + inf. ......?

ex. Will you stay at home? - Yes, I will. - No, I won't.

ex. What will you have for lunch?

Keywords / الكلمات الدالة

• كلمات تعبر عن المستقبل عموماً:

next ..... القادم.....- tomorrow غداً - in the future فى المستقبل - soon قريباً - tonight هذه الليلة - in (3 hours) (فى خلال (٣ ساعات

لاحظ الآتى:

• يمكن أن نستخدم (be) going to بعد (think) طالما أن هناك دليل:

ex. The questions are very easy. I think I'm going to get high marks. (صحيحة) (√)

ex. The questions are very easy. I think ~~I'll get high marks.~~ (خطأ) (x)

Exercises on Lesson 1



Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... Reem going to try rock climbing? (SB)
   a Are b Is c Am d Will
2. I hope we .... to the moon in the future. (Practice Test)
   a will go b are going to c went d going
3. Who .... to cook your meal this evening? (WB)
   a is going b will go c going d to go
4. What is Reem .... to do tomorrow morning? (SB)
   a go b to go c gone d going
5. I'm .... do this sport. It's too dangerous.
   a not going to b going to c going not d not be going

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The journey is **gone** to take 43 days. (SB) (............)
2. Ola **is going to** play games. She has no time. (............)
3. What are you **go** to have for dinner, Hala? (............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed's journey .... start in March. (SB)
   a to go b is going to c going to d going
2. I think my father .... a new car soon.
   a will buy b is going to buy c buy d buying

3. Is Noura going to study science .... year?

   a last   b next   c before   d on

4. .... you going to travel home by bus after school?

   a Are   b Is   c Will   d Am

5. Ali has woken up late. I think he .... be late for school.

   a is going to   b will   c are   d going to

6. I'm sure Hassan will .... well in the exams.

   a doing   b does   c do   d to do

7. What .... going to wear tomorrow?

   a were you   b you will   c are you   d you are

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Will you buy a new mobile __yesterday__? (..........)
2. What __is__ you going to do next Saturday? WB (..........)
3. My pen friend James __is going to__ visit Egypt next month, he's too busy. (..........)
4. __Are__ your mother going to make a cake for your birthday? (..........)

Lessons 2 & 3

SB pages 24-27 WB pages 85-86

"Key Vocabulary"

Bedouin families	عائلات بدوية	wet	رطب / مبتل
journey	رحلة طويلة	weather	الطقس
tent	خيمة	protect (ed)	يحمى
guide	مرشد		

Weather words

Noun الاسم		Adjective الصفة		Noun الاسم		Adjective الصفة	
sun	الشمس	sunny	مشمس	snow	الجليد	snowy	جليدى
rain	المطر	rainy	ممطر	storm	عاصفة	stormy	عاصف
clouds	السُحب	cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم	fog	ضباب	foggy	ملئ بالضباب
wind	الرياح	windy	ملئ بالرياح				

Vocabulary

dark	معتم / مظلم	sunglasses	نظارة
skills	مهارات	negotiation	تفاوض / تشاور
excited	منفعل / مثار	frightened	خائف / مرعوب
towel	منشفة (فوطة)	dentist	طبيب أسنان
terrible	سئ / فظيع	eagle	نسر
experience	تجربة «فى الحياة»	idea	فكرة
tourist	سائح	pool	بركة ماء / حمام سباحة
webpage	صفحة على الإنترنت	complete (d)	يكمل
date	تاريخ «موعد»	negotiate (d)	يتفاوض / يتشاور
equipment	معدات	sound (ed)	يبدو
top	قمة	climb (ed)	يتسلق
mirror	مرآة	shop (ped)	يتسوق

Countries, Cities & Places

South Africa	دولة جنوب إفريقيا	Serabit El Khadem	سرابيط الخادم «مدينة قديمة فى جنوب غرب سيناء»
Oman	دولة عمان	The Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
South America	قارة أمريكا الجنوبية	Ein Kidd	عين كيد «واحة منعزلة فى سيناء»

Words & Meanings

guide	مرشد	a person who shows a place to tourists
protect	يحمى	look after, keep safe(1)
journey	رحلة طويلة	a long trip from one place to another
wet	رطب / مبتل	covered with(2) water; not dry
tent	خيمة	something you sleep in when you go camping(3)

Expressions

enjoy ourselves	نستمتع
keep warm	يبقى دافئًا
take a photo	يلتقط صورة
have a guide	يصحبة مرشد
help me find	يساعدنى أن أجد
take me 43 days	يستغرق منى ٤٣ يومًا
would like + to + inf	يريد أن
get dressed	يرتدى ملابسه

Prepositions

get to the top	يصل للقمة
on the way down	فى الطريق لأسفل
put on	يرتدى
on holiday	فى إجازة
fall over	يسقط أرضًا
come out	يخرج
sit by a fire	يجلس بجوار النار
find out about	يكتشف عن

Word Differences

snow	جليد	ice	ثلج
warm	دافئ	worm	دودة
weather	الطقس «حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة فى مكان ما»	climate	المناخ «حالة الجو الدائمة فى مكان ما»
on time	فى الوقت المحدد تمامًا	in time	فى الوقت المناسب «قبل الميعاد بقليل»
on the way	فى الطريق إلى	in the way	عقبة فى الطريق
sun	شمس	son	إبن
cross	يعبر (فعل)	across	عَبْر (حرف جر)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
get to	يصل إلى	got to	draw	يرسم	drew
fall	يَسقُط	fell	sleep	ينام	slept
hurt	يصيب / يؤذى	hurt	win	يفوز	won
show	يعرض	showed	lose	يخسر	lost

Language Notes

1 • Ordinal Numbers

- هى الأعداد التى تشير الى ترتيب شىء ما فى سلسلة من الأحداث وتستخدم أيضاً عند قراءة التواريخ. الأرقام الثلاثة (1-2-3) تكتب هكذا:

first (1st) الأول — second (2nd) الثاني — third (3rd) الثالث

-وكما هو موضح عند كتابتها مختصرة يكتب الرقم وبعده آخر حرفين من الكلمة. الأرقام من 4 الى 20 يضاف للرقم (th) فى آخره، وكذلك 30 - 40 حتى 100

- fourth (4th)
- twentieth (20th)
- hundredth (100th)

- وبعد الأرقام 90-20 تكتب كالآتى:

- twenty first (21st)
- twenty second (22nd)
- twenty third (23rd)
- twenty fourth (24th)

2 • Weather words

- الأسماء التى تعبر عن حالات الطقس هى:

sun - rain - clouds - wind - snow - storm - fog

- لاستخدام هذه الأسماء كصفات لوصف حالة الطقس نضيف حرف (y) لها:

Noun الاسم	Adjective الصفة	Noun الاسم	Adjective الصفة
rain المطر	rainy ممطر	clouds السُحب	cloudy ملبد بالغيوم

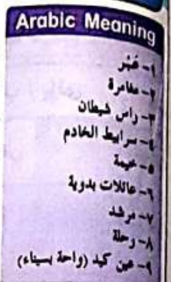
ex. It's rainy. = There is a lot of rain.

ex. It's cloudy. = There are a lot of clouds.



Reading

My Trekking Adventure



New Message

By Ahmed:

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across[1] Sinai. It's going to be a big adventure[2]! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains from Ras Shetan[3] to Serabit el Khadem[4]. I'm going to sleep in a tent[5] and stay with Bedouin families[6]. I'm going to have a guide[7] to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey[8] is going to take me 43 days.

Here's my plan:

3rd March leave Ras Shetan
14th March arrive at Ein Kidd[9]
30th March arrive at St Catherine
1st April climb Mount Catherine
15th April arrive at Serabit El Khadem

Send

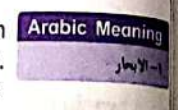
Arabic Meaning

١- عَبْر
٢- مغامرة
٣- راس شيطان
٤- سرابيط الخادم
٥- خيمة
٦- عائلات بدوية
٧- مرشد
٨- رحلة
٩- عين كيد (واحة بسيناء)



Tapescript

Mariam : Next year, I'm going to go sailing[1] down the Nile with my family. We're going to travel from Aswan to Luxor. We're going to leave Aswan on 28th December, we're going to arrive in Luxor on 4th January.



Arabic Meaning

١- الإبحار



Reading



Dear Grandma,

We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday in South Africa! It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do.
Yesterday was an adventure. We went trekking in the mountains. It was sunny[1] when we started, but when we got to the top of the mountain we saw dark clouds[2]. On the way down, the rain started! Then there was a storm[3]. The rocks were wet[4] and Tamer fell over[5] and hurt[6] himself. But it's OK - his leg is better today.
Tomorrow the weather[7] is going to be better[8], so we're going to try zip lining! I'm a bit frightened[9], but I'm excited[10], too

Arabic Meaning

١- مشمس
٢- سُحب
٣- عاصفة
٤- رطب/ مبتل
٥- سقط
٦- يصيب - يجرح
٧- الطقس
٨- أفضل
٩- خائف قليلا
١٠- مثار/ منفعل

Tapescript

Girl : This summer, I'm going on holiday with my family. On 25th July, we're going to drive to the Red Sea. On 30th July, we're going to go on a boat trip. On 3rd August, my cousins are going to visit us. On 6th August, we're going to have a picnic. We're coming home on the tenth. See you then!



Tapescript

Narrator a
Voice : It's very sunny and there aren't any clouds in the sky. I think it's a very hot day.

Narrator b
Voice : There are lots of clouds and they're very dark. I think that there's going to be a storm.

Narrator c
Voice It's a sunny day, but there are some clouds in the sky above the mountain. I think it's quite hot.

Narrator d
Voice : It's very foggy[1]. I think it's raining. It looks cold and wet[2].

Arabic Meaning

١- مليء بالضباب
٢- رطب / مبلل

Tapescript

Nader : My trip to the desert
By Nader
Last weekend, we went on a trip to the desert. I woke up early and made myself breakfast. Then I got dressed[1]. I put on my clothes and looked at myself in the mirror[2]. I put on a hat and sunglasses[3] to protect[4] myself from the sun. At the desert, we met our guide and we rode with him on our camels. My sister took this photo of herself with her camel. That night, we cooked ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, when it got cold, we sat by the fire to keep ourselves warm.

Arabic Meaning

١- ارتدى ملابسه
٢- مرآة
٣- نظارة
٤- يحمي

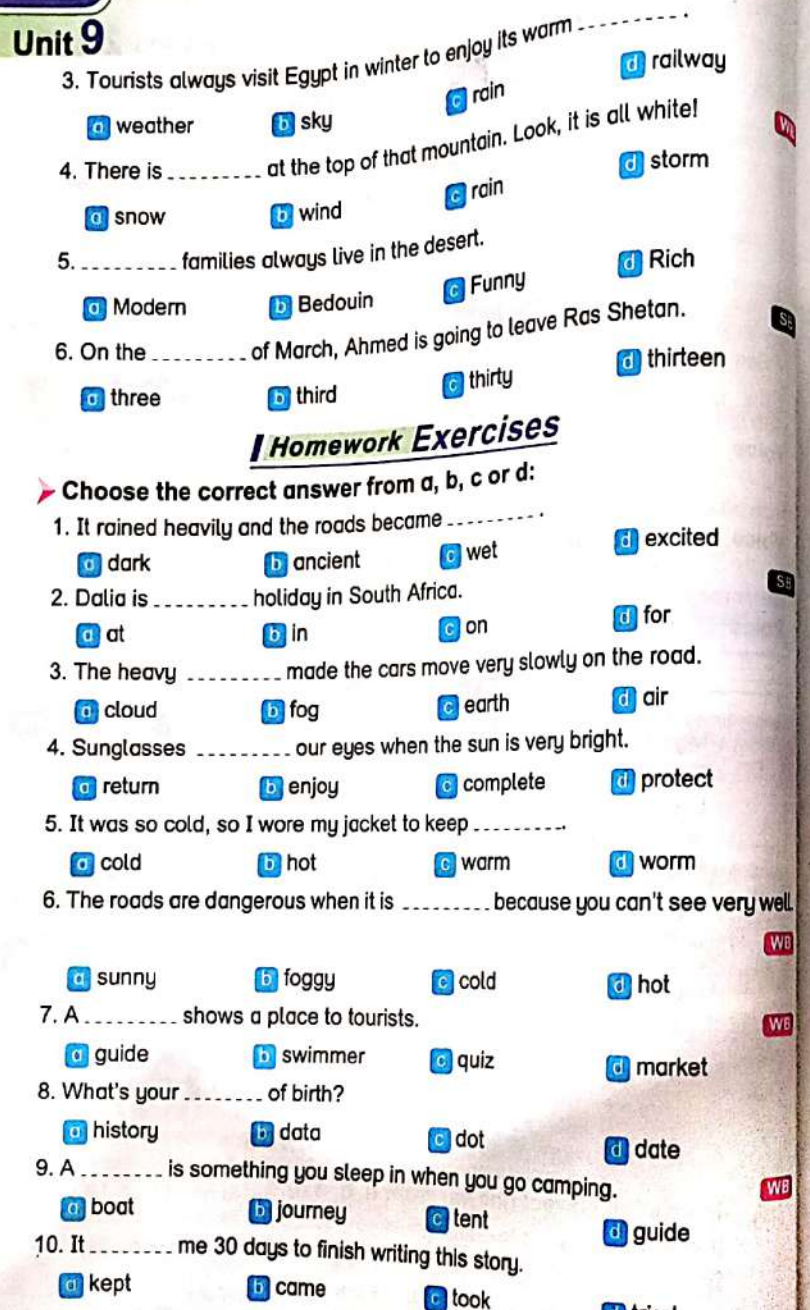


Exercises on Lessons 2 & 3

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is usually very .... in August. WB
   a rainy b sunny c funny d snowy
2. It is not very hot today because there are a lot of .... in the sky. WB
   a storms b wind c clouds d sun



3. Tourists always visit Egypt in winter to enjoy its warm ....
   a weather b sky c rain d railway
4. There is .... at the top of that mountain. Look, it is all white!
   a snow b wind c rain d storm
5. .... families always live in the desert.
   a Modern b Bedouin c Funny d Rich
6. On the .... of March, Ahmed is going to leave Ras Shetan.
   a three b third c thirty d thirteen

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It rained heavily and the roads became ....
   a dark b ancient c wet d excited
2. Dalia is .... holiday in South Africa.
   a at b in c on d for
3. The heavy .... made the cars move very slowly on the road.
   a cloud b fog c earth d air
4. Sunglasses .... our eyes when the sun is very bright.
   a return b enjoy c complete d protect
5. It was so cold, so I wore my jacket to keep ....
   a cold b hot c warm d worm
6. The roads are dangerous when it is .... because you can't see very well.
   a sunny b foggy c cold d hot
7. A .... shows a place to tourists.
   a guide b swimmer c quiz d market
8. What's your .... of birth?
   a history b data c dot d date
9. A .... is something you sleep in when you go camping.
   a boat b journey c tent d guide
10. It .... me 30 days to finish writing this story.
   a kept b came c took d tried

Grammar

Reflexive pronouns
الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية)

• تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة (التوكيدية) :

١ عندما يكون فاعل ومفعول الجملة واحد (أى نفس الشخص)

ex. Tamer hurt himself. — قام تامر بإيذاء نفسه.

ex. They're really enjoying themselves. — إنهم حقًا يستمتعون.

ex. Did you hurt yourself? — هل قمت بإيذاء نفسك؟

٢ للتأكيد على أن الفاعل قام بفعل شيء بمفرده (بدون مساعدة من أحد)

ex. Nobody helped me do the work. I did it myself. بنفسى

• لاحظ الجدول التالى لضمائر الفاعل والمفعول وصفات الملكية والضمائر المنعكسة.

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Reflexive pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة
I أنا	me	my	myself (بـ نفسى)
He هو	him	his	himself (بـ نفسه)
She هى	her	her	herself (بـ نفسها)
It هو / هى لغير العاقل	it	its	itself لغير العاقل
You أنت	you	your	yourself (بـ نفسك)
You أنتم	you	your	yourselves (بـ أنفسكم)
We نحن	us	our	ourselves (بـ أنفسنا)
They هم	them	their	themselves (بـ أنفسهم)

• لاحظ أن الضمائر المنعكسة التى تعبر عن فاعل مفرد (I / he / she / it / you) تنتهى بـ (self).

ex. I made a cup of tea myself.

ex. You should clean your room yourself, Ali. • (هنا You تعنى أنت)

• أما الضمائر المنعكسة التى تعبر عن فاعل جمع (we / you / they) تنتهى بـ (selves).

ex. They went to the party themselves.

ex. You should clean your rooms yourselves, boys. • (هنا You تعنى أنتم)

Examples:

ex. Ahmed painted the house himself.

ex. Fatma played the drums herself.

ex. The cat cleans itself.

ex. Ali and Mona cooked lunch themselves.

لاحظ الآتي:

- إذا بدأت الجملة بأمر مثبت ... .Inf أو بأمر منفى ...Don't + inf يكون الضمير المنعكس فى هذه الحالة إما yourself أو yourselves

ex. Use an umbrella to protect yourself / yourselves from the rain.

- يأتى بعد فعل (enjoy) ضمير منعكس بمعنى «يقضي وقتًا ممتعًا».

ex. We enjoyed ourselves in the park.

ex. Enjoy yourself / yourselves.

Exercises on Lessons 2 & 3

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Children usually enjoy .... when they play on the beach. (Practice Test)
   a themselves b herself c ourselves d himself
2. We enjoyed .... when we went sailing. (SB)
   a themselves b ourselves c myself d himself
3. I didn't buy this cake. I made it .... (WB)
   a yourself b itself c myself d herself
4. Huda always cleans her room ....
   a herself b themselves c himself d itself
5. Fatma took .... a photo with a camel. (SB)
   a herself b himself c itself d myself

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Did you all enjoy **yourself** at the park? (..........)
2. Animals usually clean **itself**. (..........)
3. Tarek enjoyed **herself** on the holiday. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sami came out of the sea and dried .... with a towel. (SB)
   a himself b herself c itself d themselves
2. I made .... some salad for lunch. (SB)
   a yourself b himself c myself d ourselves
3. Sara has a jacket to keep .... warm. (WB)
   a myself b herself c themselves d himself
4. Can you study English ....?
   a myself b yourself c himself d herself
5. How can we keep .... from rain?
   a ourselves b myself c themselves d itself
6. Maya taught .... to speak French. (SB)
   a itself b themselves c herself d himself
7. The birds sleep in caves to protect .... from eagles. (WB)
   a ourselves b themselves c yourselves d yourself
8. Girls like to look at .... in the mirror.
   a themselves b herself c itself d yourself

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Don't play with matches or you'll burn **myself**. (..........)
2. We don't have a cook. Mum makes the food **himself**. (..........)
3. Here are all the toys, Ziad. Enjoy **himself**! (..........)
4. A duck usually washes **herself** in water. (..........)

3 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: (مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان) (WB)

"An adventure sport"

....

....

....

....



Language Functions

1 Negotiating, respect the opinions of others التفاوض (التشاور) احترام آراء الآخرين

من أجل اتخاذ قرار بخصوص شئ ما مع آخرين يجب أن نتفاوض (نتشاور) من خلال نقاش كالآتي:

A: We're going to go mountain climbing. What equipment should we take?
B: I think we should take a phone.

لاحظ الآتى:

- يستخدم should + inf أثناء التشاور للتعبير عن النصحية بفعل معين.
- وتستخدم (I think اعتقد) لإبداء الرأي.

• نستخدم (be) going to + inf للتعبير عن خططنا المستقبلية أثناء التشاور.

A: We have a holiday, where are we going to spend it?
B: We 're going to go diving in the Red Sea.

2 Describing the weather وصف الطقس

• السؤال عن حالة الطقس نقول:

- How is the weather?
- What is the weather like today?
- Is it hot / cold / sunny / rainy etc.?
- Is it raining outside?

• والإجابة نقول:

- (Yes) It's hot / cold / sunny / rainy etc.
- Yes, it is raining outside.

Exercises on Language Functions



Complete the following dialogue:

Omar : Hi, Adel.
Adel : Hi, Omar. Did you do well in the exam?
Omar : Oh, yes!
Adel : Where should we go for the (1) ....?
Omar : I think we should (2) .... to the Red Sea
Adel : How is the weather like there?
Omar : It's (3) .... and I want to go windsurfing there.
Adel : Wow! I like windsurfing, too.
Omar : I (4) .... we will enjoy it.
Adel : Yes, it's a nice (5) ....

Key Vocabulary

advantages	مميزات	challenge (d) (n)	يتحدى / تحدى
railway line	خط سكة حديد		

Vocabulary

suggestion	اقتراح	tennis	لعبة التنس
email	رسالة بريد إلكترونى	station	محطة
form	شكل	present	هدية
sure	متأكد	library	مكتبة «للقراءة والاستعارة»
special	خاص	character	شخصية (فى كتاب / فيلم)
photo album	ألبوم صور	too	أيضًا
famous	مشهور	visit (ed) (n)	يزور / زيارة
hobby	هواية	stay (ed)	يقيم
cousin	ابن أو ابنة العم أو العمة أو الخال أو الخالة	return (ed)	يعود
basketball	لعبة كرة السلة	suggest (ed)	يقترح
newspaper article	مقال صحفى	respond (ed) (n)	يرد / رد
transport	النقل	travel (ed)	يسافر
British	بريطانى		

Countries & Cities

Japan	دولة اليابان	the UK	المملكة المتحدة «بريطانيا»	Suez	مدينة السويس (بمصر)
India	دولة الهند	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	Hong Kong	مدينة هونج كونج «بالصين»
				London	مدينة لندن «بانجلترا»

Words & Meanings

challenge تحدى	a difficult task[1] or problem	١- مهمة
railway line خط سكة حديد	the metal[1] that a train travels on	٢- معدن

Arabic Meaning

Expressions

do activities	يقوم بأنشطة
Good idea!	فكرة عظيمة!
What time...? = When...?	متى
go home	يذهب للمنزل
take a challenge	يقبل التحدى
complete a challenge	يكمل التحدى
take the ship back	يستقل سفينة عائدًا
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
travel east	يسافر تجاه الشرق
give a great idea	يوحى بفكرة عظيمة

Prepositions

by the beach	بجوار الشاطئ
by ship	بالسفينة
on + day	فى يوم...
excited about	متحمس بخصوص
around the world	حول العالم

Word Differences

email	بريد إلكترونى	airmail	بريد جوى
form	شكل	farm	مزرعة
station	محطة «قطار»	stop	محطة «أتوبيس»
special	خاص / مميز	private	خاص «ملكية»
letter	خطاب	litter	قمامة
library	مكتبة «للقراءة والاستعارة»	bookshop	مكتبة «لبيع الكتب»

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
meet	يقابل	met	learn	يتعلم	learnt (learned)

1 • 'd rather • 'd prefer • prefer

- **'d rather + inf.** تأتي بمعنى «يفضل» ويأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل

  ex. I'd rather play basketball.
- **'d prefer + to + inf. / n** تأتي بمعنى «يفضل» ويأتي بعدها (to + inf) أو (اسم n)

  ex. I'd prefer to play tennis.

  ex. I'd prefer tennis.

2 • v-ing

أفعال وتعبيرات يأتي بعدها v- ing مثل:

enjoy يستمتع - like يحب - prefer يفضل

look forward to يتطلع إلى - How / What about....? ما رأيك....؟

ex. I enjoy playing tennis in my free time.

ex. I'm looking forward to seeing you soon.

3 • Countries

- هناك بعض الدول تكتب باسم مركب بالإضافة إلى اسمها المفرد، ويمكن كتابة الاسم المركب حروف فقط كالآتي:

The USA = The United States of America (America)

The UK = The United Kingdom (Britain)

The ARE = The Arab Republic of Egypt (Egypt)

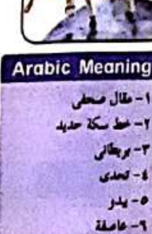
لاحظ:

- يجب أن يكون الاختصار بأحرف كبيرة (Capital letters).
- تستخدم أداة التعريف (the) قبل الأسماء المركبة للدول.

Reading



Around the World in 80 Days by Jules Verne



In 1872, the writer Jules Verne read a newspaper article[1] about a new railway line[2] across India. It gave him a great idea for a book. He wrote a story about a British[3] man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a challenge[4] to travel around the world in just 80 days. This sounds[5] easy today, but at the time, there were no cars or planes.

When Phileas Fogg takes the ship back to London from the USA, there is a big storm[6] at sea and he arrives in London one day late, on 22nd December. But he made a mistake[7]: because he travelled east around the world, it is one day earlier than he thought. So he completes his challenge on time[8]!

Arabic Meaning

١- مقال صحفى
٢- خط سكة حديد
٣- بريطانى
٤- تحدى
٥- يبدو
٦- عاصفة
٧- خطأ
٨- فى الوقت المحدد

Tapescript

Ola : I'm really enjoying myself on our holiday. I love being by the sea. What shall we do this afternoon?

Lamia : Why don't we go swimming?

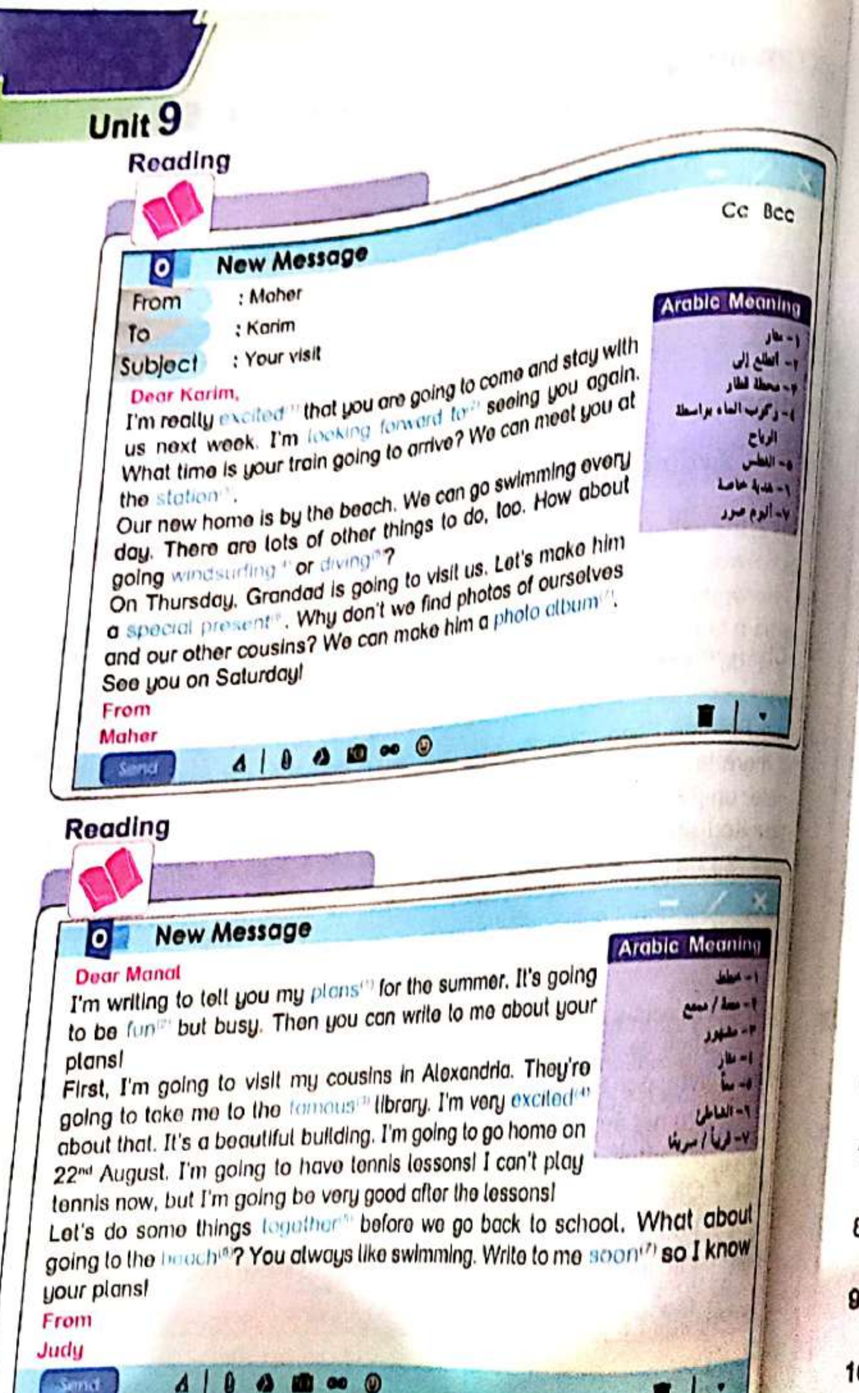
Ola : I'm not sure. Swimming is fun, but we can do that at home. I'd rather do something more exciting.

Lamia : OK. How about going windsurfing?

Ola : I don't know. I'm not very good at windsurfing... and it isn't very windy today.

Lamia : OK, not swimming and nor windsurfing... I know! Let's go kayaking.

Ola : Good idea! I love kayaking.



Reading

New Message

Cc Bcc

From : Maher
To : Karim
Subject : Your visit

Dear Karim,
I'm really excited[1] that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm looking forward to[2] seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive? We can meet you at the station[3].
Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing[4] or diving[5]?
On Thursday, Grandad is going to visit us. Let's make him a special present[6]. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins? We can make him a photo album[7].
See you on Saturday!
From
Maher

Arabic Meaning
١- مثار
٢- أتطلع إلى
٣- محطة القطار
٤- ركوب الماء بواسطة الرياح
٥- الغطس
٦- هدية خاصة
٧- ألبوم صور

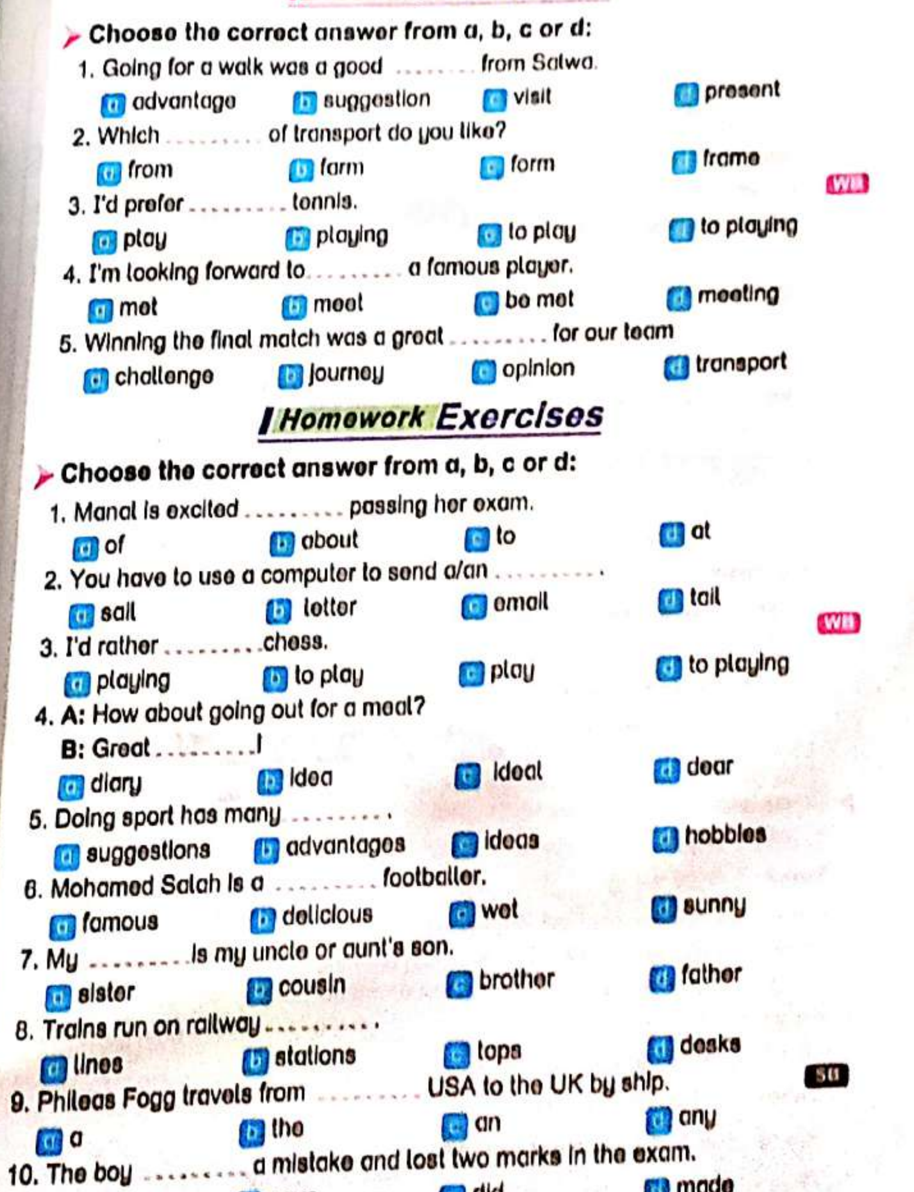
Reading

New Message

Dear Manal
I'm writing to tell you my plans[1] for the summer. It's going to be fun[2] but busy. Then you can write to me about your plans!
First, I'm going to visit my cousins in Alexandria. They're going to take me to the famous[3] library. I'm very excited[4] about that. It's a beautiful building. I'm going to go home on 22nd August. I'm going to have tennis lessons! I can't play tennis now, but I'm going be very good after the lessons!
Let's do some things together[5] before we go back to school. What about going to the beach[6]? You always like swimming. Write to me soon[7] so I know your plans!
From
Judy

Arabic Meaning
١- خطط
٢- متعة / ممتع
٣- مشهور
٤- مثار
٥- معاً
٦- الشاطئ
٧- قريباً / سريعاً





Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Going for a walk was a good .... from Salwa.
   (a) advantage (b) suggestion (c) visit (d) present
2. Which .... of transport do you like?
   (a) from (b) farm (c) form (d) frame — WB
3. I'd prefer .... tennis.
   (a) play (b) playing (c) to play (d) to playing
4. I'm looking forward to .... a famous player.
   (a) met (b) meet (c) be met (d) meeting
5. Winning the final match was a great .... for our team
   (a) challenge (b) journey (c) opinion (d) transport

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Manal is excited .... passing her exam.
   (a) of (b) about (c) to (d) at
2. You have to use a computer to send a/an ....
   (a) sail (b) letter (c) email (d) tail — WB
3. I'd rather .... chess.
   (a) playing (b) to play (c) play (d) to playing
4. A: How about going out for a meal?
   B: Great ....!
   (a) diary (b) idea (c) ideal (d) dear
5. Doing sport has many ....
   (a) suggestions (b) advantages (c) ideas (d) hobbies
6. Mohamed Salah is a .... footballer.
   (a) famous (b) delicious (c) wet (d) sunny
7. My .... is my uncle or aunt's son.
   (a) sister (b) cousin (c) brother (d) father
8. Trains run on railway ....
   (a) lines (b) stations (c) tops (d) desks
9. Phileas Fogg travels from .... USA to the UK by ship. — SB
   (a) a (b) the (c) an (d) any
10. The boy .... a mistake and lost two marks in the exam.
   (a) look (b) gave (c) did (d) made



Language Functions

Making and responding to suggestions

عمل اقتراحات والرد عليها

A: Making suggestions:

لعمل اقتراحات نستخدم الأسئلة والتعبيرات الآتية:

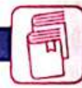
- **What / How about + v-ing...?** ما رأيك.....؟
  ex. What / How about going on a trip to Fayoum?
- **Why don't + فاعل + inf....?** لم لا.....؟
  ex. Why don't we paint the house green?
- **What shall we + فاعل + do....... ?** ماذا سوف نفعل.....؟
  ex. What shall we do at the park?
- **Shall we + inf ....?** هل سنفعل.....؟
  ex. Shall we go rock climbing?
- **Let's + inf.** هيا بنا.....
  ex. Let's go home. It's going to rain.

B: Responding to suggestions:

للرد على الاقتراحات نقول:

Agreeing للموافقة		Disagreeing للرفض	
- Great idea!	فكرة عظيمة!	- I'm not sure.	لست متأكدًا.
- That sounds good.	هذا يبدو جيدًا.	- I don't know. I'm not good at...	لا أعرف. لست جيدًا في....
- I like that.	أحب ذلك.		
- I know! Let's + inf.	أعرف! هيا بنا ...	- I'd prefer + to + inf./ n.	أفضل ...
		- I'd rather + inf.	أفضل ...
		- I disagree.	لا أوافق.

Exercises on Language Functions



Complete the following dialogue:

Osama : What shall we do tomorrow?
Emad : Shall we ❶ .... rock climbing?
Osama : I'm not sure. That sounds a bit ❷ .... I'd rather do sport.
Emad : I like sport, too. How ❸ .... playing basketball?
Osama : I don't know. I'm not very good at that.
Emad : I know! ❹ .... play tennis. We're both good at it.
Osama : Good ❺ ....
Emad : When will we meet?
Emad : At 8 o'clock in the morning.
Osama : That's OK.



Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. I prefer juice .... Coca Cola.
   (a) than (b) rather (c) to (d) for
2. The internet has advantages and ....
   (a) disadvantages (b) agreement (c) suggestions (d) disagreement

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I did the quiz myself. This means I did it **lonely**. (.............)
2. Playing football is my favourite **happy**. (.............)



Writing Skills

How to write an email

الشكل العام لرسالة البريد الإلكتروني (email)

١- نكتب أعلى الصفحة جهة اليسار.

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه
From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل
Subject : الموضوع

٢- نكتب أسفل منهم (اسم المرسل إليه + Dear) يليه فاصلة (,)
٣- أسفل كلمة (Dear) نكتب مقدمة مناسبة للإيميل
٤- نكتب محتوى الإيميل
٥- نكتب خاتمة مناسبة
٦- ننهي الإيميل بإحدى العبارات الآتية:

- Goodbye. - إلى اللقاء.
- With my best wishes. - مع أطيب تمنياتي.
- See you soon / on + day. - أراك قريبًا / في يوم ....
- From (name). - من (اسم الراسل).
- Yours, (name). - المخلص لك، (اسم الراسل).

• وإليكم نموذج لرسالة بريد إلكتروني:

New Message

To : tim505@yahoo.com
From : ziadsamir@yahoo.com
Subject : My favourite hobby

Dear Tim,
I'm happy to write this email to you. How are you?
I want to tell you that I like playing football. It's my favourite hobby. I practise it every day in the club near my house. My coach always encourages me.
Please, tell me about your favourite hobby. I'm waiting for your email.
Goodbye. / With my best wishes. / See you soon.
Yours, Ziad

Send

Paragraph

• نستخدم الكلمات الرابطة الآتية لربط الأفكار في موضوع الإنشاء:

Linking words: then / now / but / although

ثم / الآن (تستخدمان للتعبير عن تسلسل الأحداث)

• **then / now**

ex. Let me finish the homework, then we'll play.

ex. I walked to work. Now, I have a car.

لكن / بالرغم من (تستخدمان للتعبير عن التناقض)

• **but / although**

ex. I'm tired but I can do the job.

ex. Although I'm tired, I can do the job.

- لاحظ الفرق بين مكان الكلمتين

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

① An adventure sport

I like adventure sports. I like diving best. It's the sport of jumping into deep water. It is an old sport. People can do it in clubs. They can also do it in rivers, but it is sometimes dangerous. Some people enjoy diving from boats. Diving doesn't need special equipment. But, it sometimes needs special glasses. I usually go diving with some friends at weekends. We do it in a club and we spend a whole day doing it. We enjoy our time there. It helps us have strong bodies. It also helps us to be fit.

② Transport today and in the past

People travel every day. It may be a trip to school, university or work. Travelling often take a long time. There are a lot of means of transport to use. Means of transport are faster, easier and more comfortable. Some people still like to travel short distances using bikes. I think many people prefer trains and planes. In the past people used animals. People used camels to travel on in the desert. Some people used horses and even elephants.

③ A plan for a journey around the world

My uncle Samy is a pilot. He always travels around the world. He promises he will take me with him. I have a plan for the journey. First, I'm going to travel to Europe. I'm going to visit Paris in France. Then, I am going to travel to Spain and Germany. After that, I'm going to travel to America. I want to see many things there. We are going to travel on my uncle's plane. The journey is going to take ten days. I am going it take photos everywhere. It will be fun.



General Exercises on Unit 9

1 Complete the following dialogue: WB

Ahmed : What shall we do on Saturday?

Baher : Why ❶ .... we go rock climbing?

Ahmed : I'm not sure. It's quite dangerous. I'd ❷ .... do a different activity.

Baher : OK, How about ❸ .... basketball?

Ahmed : I don't know. I'm not very tall.

Baher : OK, not rock climbing or basketball..... I know! Let's ❹ .... tennis.

Ahmed : Good ❺ .... ! I always enjoy playing tennis.

Baher : My brother will come with us.

Ahmed : Really! That's good.

Baher : Goodbye.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's dark, it .... rain.
   a) is going to b) am going to c) are going to d) going to
2. .... you going to eat before you do your homework this evening? WB
   a) Will b) Is c) Are d) Am
3. I love waking up in a/an .... and hearing the birds sing in the mornings. WB
   a) tent b) pool c) equipment d) adventure
4. Would you like to make .... a cup of tea? SB
   a) yourself b) herself c) ourselves d) themselves
5. Don't swim in the sea when it is .... It is dangerous. WB
   a) windy b) sunny c) cloudy d) funny
6. My sister and I like taking photos of .... when we go out. WB
   a) myself b) ourselves c) herself d) himself
7. We can't sail because there is no .... WB
   a) wind b) snow c) rain d) fog
8. I suggested going to the park but no one ....
   a) told b) responded c) got d) returned

9. .... we go shopping on Friday?
   a Shall b Have c Does d Are
10. Why don't you .... a sports club?
   a to join b joining c join d to joining
11. After I finish school, I go ....
   a home b to home c at home d for home
12. My grandpa has a beautiful house .... the beach.
   a about b by c to d of
13. Nada is a basketball player, she's .... tall.
   a quiet b quit c quite d quick
14. Before emails, people used to send ....
   a litter b planes c letters d later
15. What .... we do this weekend?
   a shall b are c does d have

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I hope I **am going to** have a car one day. (........)
2. You all have to do your homework **yourself**. (........)
3. Leila **is going to** exercise, she's very tired. (........)
4. My little sister enjoys **himself** in the park. (........)
5. Ahmed is going to **sleeping** in a tent. SB (........)
6. This boy returns from school **herself** . (........)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Transport today and in the past" WB (يجاب عنه قبل الامتحان)

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

TEST 3 UNIT 9

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker is going to try windsurfing ....
   a next week b this evening c tomorrow d in the afternoon
2. They will try windsurfing in the ....
   a morning b evening c afternoon d a & c are correct
3. They are going to go ....
   a diving b kayaking c swimming d trekking
4. They are not going to go ....
   a rock climbing b mountain biking c kayaking d diving

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hamdy : Hi Samir. I know you were on holiday. Where did you travel?
Samir : I ❶ .... to South Africa with my father.
Hamdy : Wow! What did you do there?
Samir : We went ❷ .... in the mountains.
Hamdy : How was the ❸ ....?
Samir : It was sunny.
Hamdy : Great! Did you enjoy ❹ .... there?
Samir : Sure, We enjoyed ourselves there.
Hamdy : Did you ❺ .... photos there.
Samir : Yes, here are some of them.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Phileas Fogg was a rich British man living in London. He had a servant nam Passepartout. Fogg took the challenge to travel around the world in eighty da Fogg and Passepartout reached the Suez Canal where he took a steamer to Bom India. They took the train across India from Bombay to Calcutta. Then they got on steamer to Hong Kong then Yokohama, Japan. Passepartout hired a sailor to t them to Shanghai. They got to San Francisco and got on a train that took them to N York. They got the steamer to Liverpool, England. Finally, they hired an express to to get them to the British capital as quickly as possible. They arrived at the Lond station.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- How many days did Fogg plan to travel around the world?

....

2- Who was Fogg's servant?

....

3- Do you like travelling? Why / Why not?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Fogg and Passepartout reached the .... Canal.

a Calcutta b Shanghai c Yokohama d Suez

5- They took a .... from San Francisco to New York.

a bus b train c steamer d plane

6- What is the British capital?

a Liverpool b Hong Kong c London d San Francisc

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is a long trip from one place to another.

a picnic b journey c equipment d tent

2. Why don't we.......... kayaking?

a go b going c to going d to go

3. We want to have a/an .... to show us the market, because they know all the best places to shop.

a tent b guide c adventure d boat

4. Tamer .... his leg. He was playing football. SB

a heard b had c hurt d helped

5. Nader put on a hat to protect.......... .

a yourself b himself c herself d themselves

6- The children sat by the fire to keep.......... warm. SB

a yourselves b ourselves c themselves d herself

7. Dalia doesn't want to go zip .... SB

a lining b climbing c biking d diving

8. I don't want to have a/an .... on holiday. I want to sleep by a pool. WB

a weather b equipment c guide d adventure

9. Fogg was going to travel .... the USA.

a cross b about c across d under

10. It's cold outside. I'm .... stay at home by the fire.

a going to b go c to go d went

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We all looked at <u>yourselves</u> in the school photo. WB (..............)
2. A camel is going to <u>carried</u> the food and water. SB (..............)
3. Did a famous person draw that, or did you draw it <u>myself</u>? (..............)
4. Hani can't drive this car <u>herself</u>. (..............)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

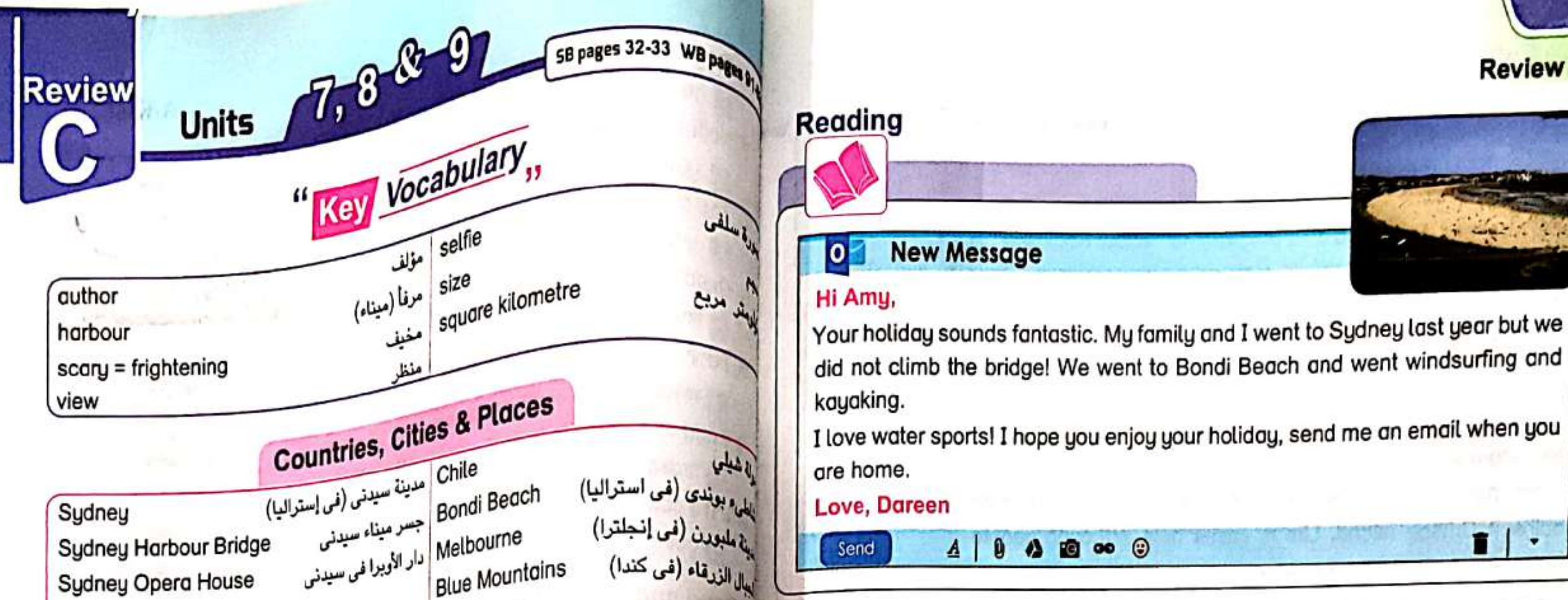
"A plan for a journey around the world" WB

(مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان)

....
....
....
....
....
....

Units 7, 8 & 9

SB pages 32-33 WB pages 91...



"Key Vocabulary"

author	مؤلف	selfie	...ورة سلفى
harbour	مرفأ (ميناء)	size	...م
scary = frightening	مخيف	square kilometre	...لومتر مربع
view	منظر		

Countries, Cities & Places

Sydney	مدينة سيدنى (فى إستراليا)	Chile	...لة شيلي
Sydney Harbour Bridge	جسر ميناء سيدنى	Bondi Beach	...اطىء بوندى (فى استراليا)
Sydney Opera House	دار الأوبرا فى سيدنى	Melbourne	...ينة ملبورن (فى إنجلترا)
Surfer's Paradise	سيرفرز باراديس (ضاحية في أستراليا)	Blue Mountains	...بال الزرقاء (فى كندا)

Reading







New Message

Hi Dareen,

How are you? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday I climbed Sydney Harbour Bridge[1]. It was very high and scary[2]. But the views[3] from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie[4] of ourselves!

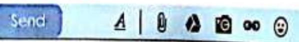
Tonight I am going to listen to music at the Sydney Opera House[5], but it is not opera, it is classical[6] music! Tomorrow I am going to the Blue Mountains. I am going to swim in a lake and go rock climbing.

Here are some photos!

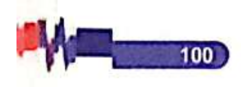
Love, Amy

Arabic Meaning

١- جسر ميناء سيدني
٢- مخيف
٣- مناظر
٤- صورة سلفى
٥- دار الأوبرا
٦- كلاسيكى



Send





Reading

New Message

Hi Amy,

Your holiday sounds fantastic. My family and I went to Sydney last year but we did not climb the bridge! We went to Bondi Beach and went windsurfing and kayaking.

I love water sports! I hope you enjoy your holiday, send me an email when you are home.

Love, Dareen

Send



Tapescript

Women : Egypt is just over 1 million square kilometres[1].

Man : Australia is the sixth largest country in the world. It is just over seven million, six hundred thousand square kilometres.

Women : The highest mountain in Egypt is Mount Catherine. It is over two thousand six hundred metres high.

Man : The highest mountain in Australia is Mount Kosciuszko. It is over two thousand, two hundred metres high.

Women : The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows[2] through Egypt and other countries in Africa. It's over six thousand, 51% hundred kilometres long.

Man : The longest river in Australia is the River Murray. It is over two thousand, five hundred kilometres long. Be careful of the crocodiles[3]!

Women : In Egypt, the tallest building is the Cairo Tower. It is one hundred and eighty-seven metres tall.

Man : The tallest building in Australia is the Q1 building in Surfer's Paradise[4] and it is three hundred and twenty-two metres tall.

Arabic Meaning

١- كيلومتر مربع
٢- يتدفق
٣- تماسيح
٤- سيرفرز باراديس (ضاحية فى أستراليا)



Reading

Last weekend, I watched a TV programme[1] about Robinson Crusoe Island. The author[2] of Robinson Crusoe, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real sailor[3] called Alexander Selkirk spent four years alone[4] here. Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotter[5] than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after[6] themselves. The nearest land, Chile[7], is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!

Arabic Meaning

١- برنامج تليفزيوني
٢- مؤلف
٣- بحار
٤- بمفرده
٥- أكثر سخونة
٦- يعتني بـ
٧- دولة شيلي



Tapescript

(1)

Girl : Hi Lara. How was your weekend?
Lara : Oh, it was terrible[1].
Girl : Oh dear, what happened?
Lara : I went to the museum, but it was closed. Then missed the bus so I had to walk home.
Girl : Oh dear!

Arabic Meaning

١- سيء جداً
٢- قريب
٣- الأسوأ

(2)

Boy 1 : I love tennis. Do you agree that it's more exciting than any other sport?
Boy 2 : I'm afraid I don't agree

(3)

Girl 1 : What shall we do this afternoon, Lama?
Girl 2 : Why don't we go swimming?
Girl 1 : I'm not sure. The swimming pool is not very near[2].
Girl 2 : OK. How about going to the park?
Girl 1 : Good idea! I love the trees and plants there.

(4)

Boy 3 : What do you think about that book you're reading?
Boy 4 : I think it's the worst[3] book ever!



TEST 4 Review C



A Listening

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker went to ....
   a) America b) Africa c) Australia d) Asia
2. The speaker visited Sydney .... Bridge.
   a) Port b) Harbour c) Canal d) Lake
3. The bridge was very high and ....
   a) scary b) funny c) old d) modern
4. The .... from the top were fantastic.
   a) water b) views c) canals d) buildings

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Israa : Hi Nadeen. What about going to the library?
Nadeen : Good ❶ .... ! Do you often go there?
Israa : Yes, I ❷ .... there last week.
Nadeen : What ❸ .... you read last week?
Israa : I read a book called "Robinson Crusoe."
Nadeen : Is it a ❹ .... ?
Israa : Yes, it's a famous story by Daniel Defoe.
Nadeen : What are you ❺ .... to read tomorrow?
Israa : I'm going to read another story by the same author.
Nadeen : OK! I will come with you.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

In the 1600s, people were interested in travelling around the world. Sa
wanted to travel to new countries and see new things. Sometimes sailors we
sea for three or four years. Daniel Defoe took the idea for Robinson Crusoe from
true story of Alexander Selkirk. Selkirk was a sailor who spent four years alone o
small island near South America. In 1709, an English ship rescued him. Selkirk
wrote about his life and he became very famous. Robinson Crusoe is like Sel
Crusoe ate coconuts on the island. <u>He</u> made a good home on the island and g
his own food. He had animals and he made his own clothes. He learnt to live alo

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Who wrote "Robinson Crusoe"?

   ....

2. What did sailors want?

   ....

3. Would you like to live alone on an island? Why / Why not?

   ....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ....
   a Robinson Crusoe   b Daniel Defoe
   c Alexander Selkirk   d a sailor

5- Alexander Selkirk was a/an ....
   a island   b sailor   c coconut   d animal

6- Robinson Crusoe is like ....
   a Daniel   b Selkirk   c Defoe   d America

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It .... eight years to build Sydney Harbour Bridge.
   a take   b took   c to take   d taking

2. I like this book .... it is funny.
   a although   b but   c because   d so

3. There was a/an .... to find out who could spell the most words correctly. WB
   a aquarium   b competition   c population   d funfair

4. My little brother enjoyed .... at the family party. WB
   a yourself   b herself   c himself   d myself

5. At lunch time, I go to the .... to eat.
   a canteen   b funfair   c library   d aquarium

6. Sally was frightened when she watched the film. It was ....
   a funny   b beautiful   c easy   d scary

7. The .... from the top of the Cairo Tower is fantastic.
   a review   b view   c interview   d queue

8. She asked me to look .... her baby as she was too busy.
   a after   b up   c down   d before

9. A lot of ships are waiting in the ....
   a market   b aquarium   c harbour   d canteen

10. I'm .... try rock climbing next weekend. WB
   a going to   b going   c to go   d to going

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

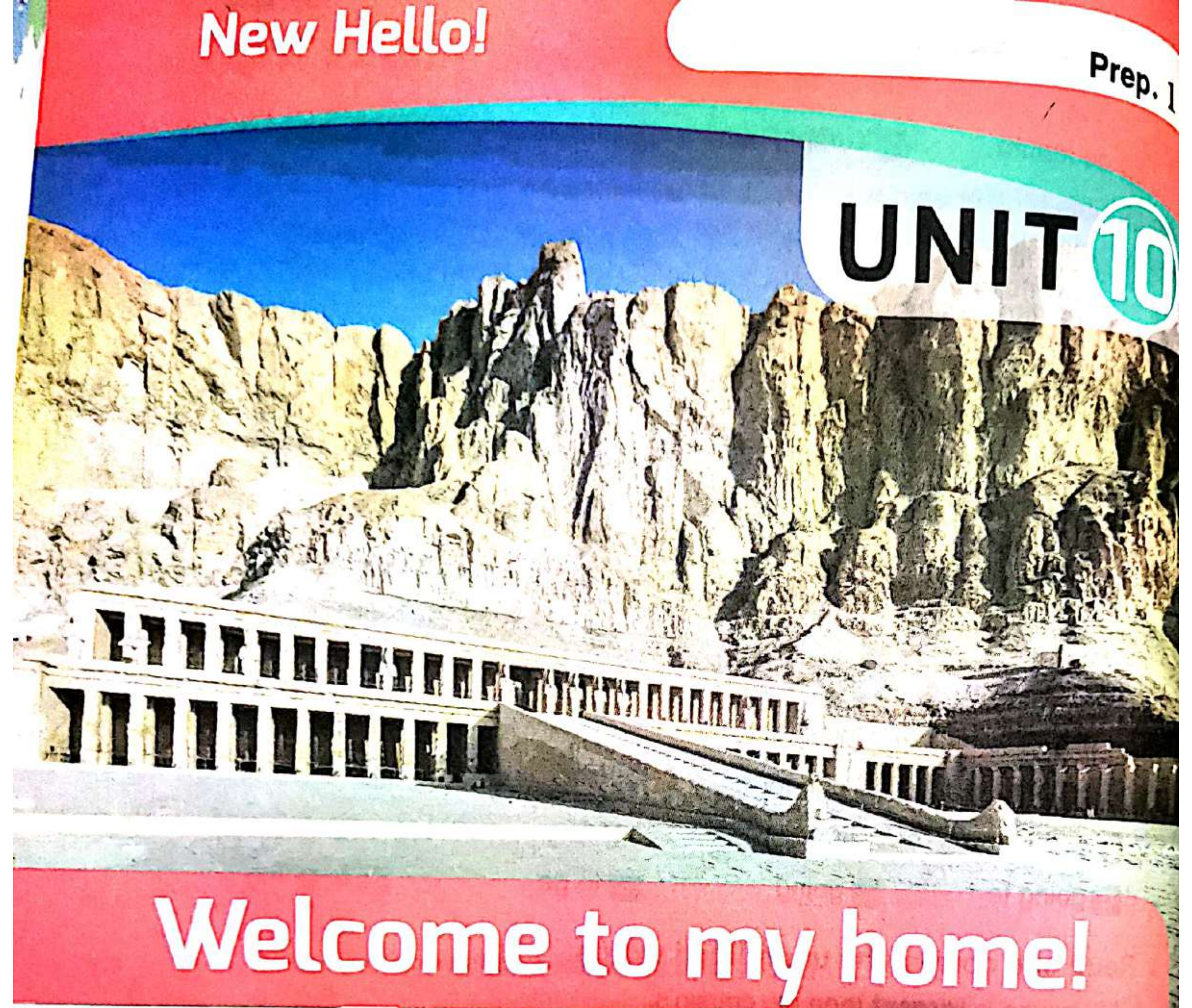
1. My house is **<u>largest</u>** than my cousin's. (..............)
2. Soha is **<u>gone</u>** to start a new job. (..............)
3. I don't need help; I can do it **<u>ourselves</u>**. (..............)
4. **<u>Do</u>** you complete reading the story yesterday? (..............)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: WB

"A story you like"

....
....
....
....
....
....



UNIT 10

Welcome to my home!

Objectives

Reading:
Homes in ancient Egypt; round houses around the world

Writing:
- A paragraph describing your first school
- A timeline of a famous person's life
- A diagram of future houses

Listening:
A podcast about homes of the future

Speaking:
Saying what things are made of; predicting the future

Language:
is / are made of; there was / were; there will / won't be for predictions with no evidence; saying years

Life Skills:
Creativity; good listening and self-expression

Lessons 

SB pages 34-37 WB pa

"Key Vocabulary"

welcome	مرحبًا	material	
roof	سطح (مبنى)	round	ير الشكل
tap	صنبور (حنفية)	curtain*	ة
bricks	قوالب طوب	oven	
cushion*	وسادة (مخدة)		

Materials

cotton*	قطن	glass	ج
metal	معدن	plastic	ستيك
wood	خشب	wool	ف
leather	جلد مدبوغ	stone	ر



Vocabulary

tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي (تابلت)	scarf	ارب
village	قرية	ancient Egypt	ر القديمة
living room	حجرة المعيشة	the Stone Age	صر الحجري
bedroom	حجرة النوم	teaspoon	عقة شاي
jumper	بلوفر	wall	ئط
sofa	كنبة	wallet	حفظة (للنقود)
lamp	مصباح	turn (ed)	ب/يدّور
seat	مقعد ثابت	paint (ed)	ن/يرسم بالألوان
pencil case	مقلمة		

Places

Deir el-Madina دير المدينة (قرية بالأقصر)	the Valley of the Kings وادي الملوك (مقابر قديمة بالأقصر)	the Nile valley ادي النيل



Words & Meanings

		Arabic Meaning
brick قالب طوب	a hard, square[1] object that is used for building houses, walls etc.	١-مربع ٢-ناعم / أملس

Unit 10

oven	فرن	the equipment used for cooking or baking food / bread
roof	سطح (مبنى)	the top part of a building / a house
round	مستدير الشكل	with a shape like a circle
tap	صنبور (حنفية)	something you turn to get water in the house, garden etc.

Expressions

What colour...?	ما لون...؟
(be) called	يُسمى/يُدعى
paint (something) + colour	يلون شيء باللون ...

Prepositions

on the roof	على السطح
on top of	على قمة
with red doors	ذات أبواب حمراء
oven for bread	فرن لصنع الخبز
get ... from	يحصل على ... من
about two kilometres away	يبعد حوالي كيلومترين

Word Differences

roof	سطح (مبنى)	ceiling	سقف حجرة (من الداخل)
leather	جلد مدبوغ	skin	جلد حي
wood	خشب	would	فعل ناقص
tap	صنبور (حنفية)	tape	شريط
lamp	مصباح	lamb	حمل / لحم ضأن
material	مادة (خام تستخدم في صنع شئ)	subject	مادة (دراسية)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple
sleep	ينام	slept
build	يبني	built





Language Notes

1 Materials used for making things

wool	صوف	⇨	jumper	بلوفر	hat	قبعة	scarf	إيشارب
metal	معدن	⇨	knife	سكين	teaspoon	ملعقة شاي	cars	سيارات
stone	حجر	⇨	statue	تمثال	building	مبنى	brick	قالب طوب
glass	زجاج	⇨	window	نافذة	glasses	نظارة	screen	شاشة
leather	جلد مدبوغ	⇨	shoes	حذاء	bag	شنطة	wallet	محفظة

		⇨						
cotton	قطن	⇨	dress	فستان	skirt	جيبة	socks	جورب
plastic	بلاستيك	⇨	ruler	مسطرة	tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي	toy	لعبة
wood	خشب	⇨	table	منضدة	chair	كرسي	window	نافذة

2 • seat • chair • sofa

• **seat** مقعد ثابت (في وسيلة مواصلات/مسرح/سينما)

ex. I always leave my seat for old people on a bus.

• **chair** كرسي (يكون له ظهر)

ex. Please, move that chair from the way.

• **sofa** كنبة

ex. All of us like to sit on that sofa to watch TV.

3 • glass • glasses

• **glass** زجاج (مادة لصنع الأكواب والنوافذ)

ex. A window consists of glass and wood.

• **a glass** كوب زجاجي

ex. Would you like a glass of juice?

• **glasses** نظارة

ex. I can't see without my glasses.

Reading



Deir el-Madina



In ancient* Egypt[1], there was a village[2] called Deir el-Madina. The people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings[3]. There were 68 houses.

The walls[4] of the houses were made of bricks[5] and the doors were made of wood[6]. The people painted[7] their houses white, with red doors.

The houses had a kitchen[8] and a living room[9], but there weren't any bedrooms[10]. People usually slept on the roof[11] because it was very hot at night.

There was usually an oven[12] for bread in the kitchen, but there weren't any taps[13]. People got their water from the Nile valley[14], about two kilometres away.

Arabic Meaning

١-مصر القديمة
٢-قرية
٣-وادى الملوك
٤-حوائط
٥-قوالب طوب
٦-خشب
٧-يلون - يدهن
٨-مطبخ
٩-حجرة معيشة
١٠-حجرات نوم
١١-سطح
١٢-فرن
١٣-صنبور (حنفية)
١٤-وادى النيل



Say it correctly

* ancient — ينطق حرفي (ci) في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (ش).
* curtain — ينطق حرفي (ur) مثل نطق حرفي (ir) فى كلمة (bird).
* cushion — ينطق حرف (u) في هذه الكلمة مثل حروف (oo) في كلمة (book).



Boy 1 : What is a car made of?

Boy 2 : That's a difficult question! It's made of a lot of things. For example, a car door is made of metal[1] and the windows are made of glass[2].

Boy 1 : What are the seats[3] made of, where you sit?

Boy 2 : I think expensive car seats are made of leather[4]. My father's car is not expensive. The seats are made of plastic[5].

Arabic Meaning



Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Practice Test

1. Most windows are made of ....
   a) wool b) glass c) cotton d) paper
2. Don't forget to turn off the .... after you finish cooking.
   a) tap b) curtain c) oven d) roof
3. A car door is made of ....
   a) plastic b) metal c) cotton d) glass

WB

4. A/An .... protects a house from the sun and rain.
   a) roof b) tap c) oven d) curtain
5. A ball is .... in shape.
   a) square b) long c) round d) tall

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cotton is a .... which we use to make clothes.
   a) subject b) material c) metal d) cushion
2. This .... helps me sleep. It's very soft.
   a) curtain b) roof c) jumper d) cushion

3. What .... did they paint their house? SB

a size b colour c price d height

4. A jumper is usually made of .... WB

a wool b wood c metal d plastic

5. There weren't any cars in .... Egypt. SB

a ancient b new c modern d special

6. I'd like to .... the walls of my room green.

a call b pay c paint d look

7. A statue is usually made of .... WB

a stone b wool c leather d cotton

8. What is the material we use to make tables ....?

a call b calling c calls d called

9. You can turn the .... to get water. WB

a roof b tap c oven d brick

10. It's dark in here, please open the ....

a curtains b bricks c roofs d taps



1 made of / made from

made of

• نستخدم (be) made of بمعنى «مصنوع من» عندما لا تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء ويكون من الممكن التعرف عليها (وغالبًا تستخدم مع المواد الخام) بالصيغة الآتية:

الشيء / الأشياء + is / are + made of + المادة المصنع منها

ex. The sofa is made of leather.

ex. The cushions are made of cotton.

made from

• نستخدم (be) made from بمعنى «مصنوع من» عندما تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشيء ولا يمكن التعرف عليها (وغالبًا تستخدم مع مواد ليست خام) بنفس الصيغة السابقة:

ex. This cake is made from flour.

لاحظ الآتى:

ex. This desk is made from an old door.

ex. This desk is made of wood.

• فى المثال الأول استخدمنا **(be) made from** لأن الباب تغير شكله فلا يوجد مقبض ولاشيء يدل على أنه باب وقد تم تقطيعه لعمل مكتب، أما فى المثال التالى فيظهر بوضوح أن المكتب مصنوع من الخشب.

Question الاستفهام

• نسأل عن المادة / المواد التي صنع منها شيئ / أشياء بالصيغة الآتية:

What + is / are + الشيء/الأشياء + made of / from?

ex. What are cars made of?

ex. What is bread made from?

2 some & any

• نستخدم **some** بمعنى «بعض» في الجملة المثبتة قبل الاسم الذي يعد والذي لا يعد:

ex. She bought some pens (اسم يُعد) / meat (اسم لا يُعد).

لاحظ الآتى:

• يمكن استخدام **some** في السؤال في حالتي العرض والطلب.

ex. Would you like some apples? (عرض)

ex. Can I have some tea? (طلب)

• نستخدم any بمعنى «أي» في الجملة المنفية وفي السؤال مع الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد.

ex. I don't have any rice / apples.

» Did you buy any pasta / pens?

تستخدم مع some		تستخدم مع any	
سؤال (عرض / طلب)	جملة مثبتة	سؤال	جملة منفية

3 There is / was — There are / were

Affirmative الإثبات

There is / was يوجد/كان يوجد (للمفرد)

There are / were يوجد/كان يوجد (للجمع)

- تستخدم There is / was مع الأسماء التي تعد المفردة والأسماء التي لا تعد في المضارع والماضي كالآتي:

ex. There is / was a pen on the table.

ex. There is / was some water on the floor.

- تستخدم There are / were مع الأسماء التي تعد الجمع في المضارع والماضي كالآتي:

ex. There are / were some pens on the table.

Negative فى النفى

There is not (isn't) / was not (wasn't) لا يوجد (للمفرد)

There are not (aren't) / were not (weren't) لا يوجد (للجمع)

ex. There isn't / wasn't a pen there.

ex. There weren't any bedrooms in that building.

Question السؤال

Is there / Was there ...? هل يوجد...؟ (للمفرد)

Are there / Were there ...? هل يوجد...؟ (للجمع)

ex. Is there a carrot / an egg on the table?

ex. Is there any soup on the table?

ex. Were there any tomatoes?

- للاجابة المختصرة نقول:

Yes, there is / was - are / were.

No, there isn't / wasn't - aren't / weren't.





Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The television is .... of glass and plastic. SB

a make b making c to make d made

2. What -------- pencil cases made of?
   a is   b was   c 's   d are
3. The cushions -------- made of cotton.
   a has   b is   c was   d are
4. When I went to the desert, there -------- people.
   a wasn't some   b isn't any   c weren't any   d is some
5. When we visited Deir el-Madina, there -------- any bedrooms.
   a aren't   b weren't   c isn't   d were

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There wasn't **some** milk in the kitchen yesterday. (--------)
2. There **isn't** any books in that box. (--------)
3. The lamp is **making** of glass. SB (--------)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is your new dress made --------, Leila?
   a off   b at   c of   d in
2. There -------- any cars in ancient Egypt.
   a weren't   b are   c wasn't   d was
3. Paper -------- sometimes made of wood.
   a were   b is   c are   d 're
4. Walls -------- of plastic.
   a are made   b was made   c isn't made   d aren't mad
5. The table is made -------- wood.
   a from   b in   c of   d about
6. I don't need suger, there is -------- in my tea.
   a some   b any   c no   d an
7. Glasses -------- glass and plastic.
   a are made of   b is made from   c is made of   d are made f
8. -------- there any statues in that museum?
   a Is   b Are   c Was   d Has
9. The wallet -------- of leather.
   a is made   b made   c is making   d are made
10. Scarfs are usually made -------- wool.
   a at   b in   c from   d of

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. There **are** too much salt in the food, I can't eat it. (--------)
2. The sofa is made **from** leather. SB (--------)
3. There weren't **some** cars in the park yesterday. (--------)
4. What **is** bridges made from? (--------)

Lesson 3

SB pages 38 - 39 WB page 95



Key Vocabulary

electricity	الكهرباء	the moon	القمر
a sign for electricity	إشارة للكهرباء	architect	مهندس معماري
electric car	سيارة كهربائية	robot	إنسان آلي
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	rocket	صاروخ
driverless cars	سيارة بدون سائق «تقود نفسها»	Earth	كوكب الأرض
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	solar panels	ألواح شمسية

Vocabulary

podcast	نشرة صوتية	3D printer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد
charger	شاحن	afraid	خائف
parcel	طرد بريدى	dream	حلم
guest	ضيف	land telephone	تليفون أرضى
project	مشروع	robot teacher	معلم آلى
ordinary	عادى	pilot	طيار
accident	حادث	petrol	بنزين
machine	ماكينة	produce (d)	ينتج
post	بريد	talk (ed)	يتحدث
swimming pool	حمام سباحة	express (ed)	يعبر عن
safer	أكثر أماناً		

Words & Meanings

driverless car سيارة بدون سائق	a car that can drive itself, without a driver
drone طائرة بدون طيار	This machine can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot.
electricity الكهرباء	we can use the sun or the wind to produce this.
electric car سيارة كهربائية	a car that does not use petrol
robot إنسان آلي	This machine can do many things for us. Some of them can talk.
rocket صاروخ	an object that can travel to space
solar panel لوحة شمسية	we put it on a roof. It produces electricity using the sun.
wind turbines توربينات الرياح	machines that use the wind to make electricity
architect مهندس معماري	someone whose job is to design buildings

Expressions

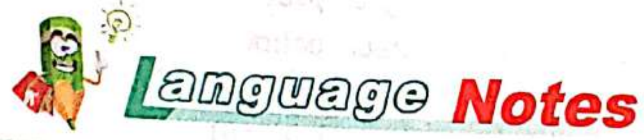
design buildings	يصمم مبانى
produce electricity	ينتج كهرباء
get electricity	يحصل على الكهرباء
work on a project	يعمل فى مشروع
drive (someone) to + place	يوصل (شخص) بالسيارة إلى....

Prepositions

on the roof	على السقف
live on the moon	يعيش على القمر
for a holiday	من أجل إجازة
in + year	في عام ...
under the sea	تحت سطح البحر
on tablets	على الكمبيوتر اللوحى «التابلت»

Word Differences

rocket	صاروخ	racket	مضرب «تنس»
robot	إنسان آلى	rabbit	أرنب
electric	كهربى	electronic	الكترونى



Present		Past simple
fly	يطير	flew
read	يقرأ	read

Language Notes

1 • Word endings (-less)

-هناك نهايات تضاف للكلمات تغير معناها أو تعطي عكسها منها (-less) وأمثلة على ذلك:

driverless	بلا قائد	careless	مهمل
homeless	بلا مأوى	hopeless	يائس

ex. We may use driverless cars in the future.

2 • earth • ground • floor

• **earth** كوكب الأرض / تربة

ex. We live on the earth.

ex. The rain left the earth wet.

• **ground** سطح الأرض «خارج المنزل / المبانى»

ex. You shouldn't throw rubbish on the ground.

• **floor** أرضية «المبانى والطوابق»

ex. There are a lot of things on the room floor.

3 • drive • ride

يقود (سيارة)

• drive

ex. I can drive a car easily.

يركب «دراجة - حيوان - أتوبيس»

• ride

ex. He always rides a bike to school.



Presenter : Hello, welcome to our podcast[1]: Homes of the Future. Today we have a special guest[2] - Dina Hassan. She is a famous architect[3]. Hello Dina.

Dina : Hello.

Interviewer : What does an architect do?

Dina : Well, I design buildings such as houses or schools. I think about what materials to use and I draw pictures of it.

Interviewer : What are you designing at the moment?

Dina : I'm working on a project for houses for the future. They'll be a different to our houses today.

Interviewer : In what ways will they be different?

Dina : Well, I think we'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much space. So the garden will be on the roof.

Interviewer : A garden on the roof, great!

Dina : And I think people will all use electric cars[4] in the future, so there'll be chargers[5] for electric car next to the house.

Interviewer : How will people get their electricity[6]?

Dina : There'll be lots of solar panels[7] and a wind turbine* [8]. They'll make the electricity.

Interviewer : Great. What else will be different in 2050?

Dina : Well, I think there will be robots[9] to do all the housework.

Interviewer : Fantastic! Will people use drones[10]?

Dina : Yes, I think drones will bring food and parcels[11] to the house.

Interviewer : What materials will the house be made of?

Dina : We will use plastic bricks that are very strong. We'll also use a lot of glass and metal. Look, here's a picture of what it will look like.

Interviewer : Oh it's beautiful. Thank you very much Dina for talking to us . I think I'll like living in this house!

Arabic Meaning

١-نشرة صوتية
٢-ضيف
٣- مهندسة معمارية
٤-سيارات كهربائية
٥-شاحن
٦-كهرباء
٧-ألواح شمسية
٨-توربينة رياح
٩-إنسان آلي
١٠-طائرة بدون طيار
١١-طرود بريدية

Say it correctly

* turbine

ينطق الحرفين (ur) فى هذه الكلمة مثل حرفى (ir) فى كلمة (bird). وينطق حرف (i) مثله فى كلمة (fine)

Reading



Holidays on the moon



In 2080, you won't go to the beach for your holiday. You will go to the moon[1]! There will be rockets[2] that leave Earth[3] every day, and the journey will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast.

Arabic Meaning

١- القمر
٢- صواريخ
٣- كوكب الأرض
٤- سيارة بدون سائق
٥- أكثر أمانا
٦- حوادث

Driverless cars[4]



In 2080, people won't drive a car. We will all have a driverless car. They will be safer[5] and there won't be any accidents[6]. Students will read a book or watch TV when a computer on the car drives them to school.

Exercises on Lesson 3

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We put -------- panels on a roof. They produce electricity from the sun. WB
   a) solar b) sunny c) stormy d) windy
2. This factory uses --------- to build cars.
   a) drones b) robots c) rockets d) pools
3. People will get --------- from the sun and the wind in the future. SB
   a) electric b) electrons c) email d) electricity
4. It doesn't need a driver; it's a --------- car.
   a) driverless b) homeless c) careless d) useless
5. Will there be --------- cars in the future? SB
   a) electricity b) windy c) music d) electric

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can use the sun or the wind to -------- electricity. WB
   a) introduce b) express c) drive d) produce

2. Man could reach the moon using ....

a panels b rackets c rockets d turbines

3. There won't be any .... cars in the future. SB

a ordinary b modern c smart d moral

4. My father .... me to school every day.

a rides b flies c drives d designs

5. .... can do many things for us.

a Robots b Rackets c Rockets d Rabbits

6. Wind ....use the wind to produce electricity. WB

a printers b panels c robots d turbines

7. A/An .... can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot. WB

a dream b drone c racket d electric car

8. A lot of things were prepared .... the holiday.

a to b on c over d for

9. A/An .... designs buildings. SB

a teacher b artist c architect d pilot

10. I think we will live on the ....; it is a dream. SB

a moon b earth c ground d roof



Making predictions

عمل تنبؤات

(will / will not) for future predictions

انظر الشرح في (Unit 9).

Examples

- There **will be** electric cars in the future.
- There **won't be** ordinary mobiles.
- I think it **will be** hot tomorrow.
- **Will** there **be** ordinary mobiles in the future?



Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Practice Test

1. I hope we .... to the moon in the future.
   a will go b are going to c went d going
2. People .... all use electric cars in the future.
   a would b will c are d were
3. I will go out tonight, I .... stay at home.
   a won't b didn't c am not d could
4. My sister is 16. Next year, she .... be 17.
   a is b was c will d can
5. I think we .... drones for post in the future. WB
   a use b will use c used d using

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I think we will <u>having</u> solar panels on planes in the future. WB (..............)
2. I will go to the beach <u>last</u> week. (..............)
3. **A:** <u>Would</u> you get your exam results tomorrow?
   B: Yes, I will. (..............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... we travel to other planets in the future?
   a Have b Will c Had d Did
2. Emad .... be able to go to the cinema because he has no tickets.
   a won't b didn't c will d doesn't
3. In the future, people .... to the beach for holidays. They will go to the moon. WB
   a will go b didn't go c won't go d go

4. Mona will revise for her maths test ....
   a) yesterday b) last week c) tomorrow d) ago
5. We hope we .... enjoy ourselves in the park tonight.
   a) will b) would c) did d) won't
6. I .... help you carry your heavy bag.
   a) have b) does c) will d) am
7. Ola .... be a doctor one day. She is very clever.
   a) will b) won't c) can't d) couldn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I think Salah **win** the best player prize in the next match. (.............)
2. I hope my father will buy a car in the **past**. (.............)
3. We're going to watch a new film. I'm sure it **is** be very exciting. (.............)
4. Amir promises that he will **helping** me with my homework. (.............)

3 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان

"What do you think holidays will be like in the year 2050?" SB

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

"Key Vocabulary"

round house	منزل مستدير الشكل	space	
cool	بارد	igloo*	
rectangle	مستطيل	yurt*	للسكن)
rectangular	مستطيل الشكل	earthquake	
triangle	مثلث	circle	
triangular	مثلث الشكل	imagination	
warm	دافئ		

Vocabulary

disadvantages	عيوب	timeline	
traditional	تقليدي	drawing	
size	حجم / مقاس	footballer	
events	أحداث	diagram	/ تخطيطي
temperature	درجة حرارة	technology	
modern	حديث	European Champions League	ال الأوروبي
suddenly	فجأة		
reason	سبب / تفسير		

Countries, Cities & Places

Canda دولة كندا (بأوروبا)	Burkina Faso دولة بوركينا فاسوا (بأفريقيا)	Mongolia ليا (بآسيا)
Mount Kilimangaro جبل كليمنجارو (بتنزانيا)	Siwa واحة سيوة (بمصر)	the Red Sea مر (بمصر)

Words & Meanings

Word	Arabic	Meaning
igloo	كوخ الإسكيمو	a house made of ice and snow
cool	بارد / لطيف	a temperature[1] that is cold, but not too cold
earthquake	زلزال	a natural[2] event when the ground suddenly moves
round	مستدير الشكل	with a shape like a circle[3]
imagination	تخيل / خيال	using the mind[4] to think creatively[5]
space	مساحة / فراغ / فضاء	an area that you can move around it
yurt	خيمة كبيرة للسكن	a large tent that people can live in

Arabic

Expressions

heavy snow	جليد كثيف
heavy rain	مطر غزير
keep warm / cool	يحتفظ بالدفء / بالبرودة
How fantastic!	كم هو رائع!
ride a bike	يركب دراجة
start school	يبدأ الدراسة
(be) born in	يولد في
draw / make a plan	يرسم / يعمل خطة
make ... work	يجعل شيئ يعمل
move house	ينتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزِّل)

Prepositions

move around	يتحرك حول / يتجول
around the world	حول العالم
in the past	في الماضي
in detail	بالتفصيل
fall from	يسقط من
think of / about	يفكر فى
look like	يشبه
different to / from	مختلف عن
look out at	ينظر للخارج من
play for	يلعب لصالح

Word Differences

space	فراغ / فضاء	spice	تابل (من التوابل)
yurt	خيمة كبيرة للسكن	yacht	يخت
round	مستدير الشكل	around	حول / حوالي
reason	تفسير	cause	سبب
every day	كل يوم (حال)	everyday	يومي (صفة قبل الاسم)

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
mean	يعني	meant	bear	تلد	bore
fall	يسقط	fell	ride	يركب (دراجة / حيوان)	rode



1 Saying years

• عند قراءة الأعوام يمكن تقسيم "العام" إلى جزأين (أي يُقرأ كل رقمين معًا):

ex. 2050 = twenty fifty

ex. 1986 = nineteen eighty-six

• أو نقرأه بطريقة أخرى كالآتي:

ex. 2050 = two thousand and fifty

ex. 1986 = nineteen hundred and eighty-six

• لاحظ أن كلمات thousand / hundred تستخدمان في صيغة المفرد.
• لقراءة الأعوام من 2001 إلى 2009 نستخدم:

two thousand + number

ex. 2001 = two thousand and one
ex. 2006 = two thousand and six

ex.- 1066 = one thousand and sixty-six
- 1923 = nineteen hundred and twenty-three
- 2008 = two thousand and eight
- 3001 = three thousand and one
- 2075 = twenty seventy-five

2 Comparatives

• سبق شرح صفات المقارنة في Unit 8 وهذه أمثلة أخرى وردت بالوحدة:

warm دافئ	⇨	warmer أدفأ	few قليل	⇨	fewer أقل
cool بارد / لطيف	⇨	cooler أبرد / ألطف	noisy صاخب / مزعج	⇨	noisier أكثر إزعاجًا
nice لطيف	⇨	nicer ألطف	dirty قذر	⇨	dirtier أقذر
strong قوي	⇨	stronger أقوى	cheap رخيص	⇨	cheaper أرخص
quiet هادئ	⇨	quieter أهدأ	easy سهل	⇨	easier أسهل

• لاحظ أن الصفة المنتهية بـ y تحذف ونضيف ier عند تكوين المقارنة.
• تذكر أن هذه الصفات تأتي معها كلمة than للمقارنة بين شيئين.

ex. A round house is easier to keep warm or cool.
ex. A round building uses fewer material than an ordinary building.

3 Shape description

• من الممكن أن نضع المقطع (ular) إلى نهاية بعض الأسماء لتكوين الصفة منها:

circle دائرة	⇨	circular دائري الشكل
rectangle مستطيل	⇨	rectangular مستطيل الشكل
triangle مثلث	⇨	triangular مثلث الشكل

• لاحظ أن هناك كلمات أخرى تستخدم كإسم وكصفة كما هي:

square مربع	⇨	square مربع الشكل







Reading

Round houses around the world

Many traditional[1] houses in the past were round[2]. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this? There are lots of reasons[3]!

A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake[4] or in strong winds. Also, heavy snow[5] or rain will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm[6] or cool[7]. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle[8] or square[9].

Finally, a round building uses fewer materials (so it is cheaper to make). It also has more space[10] inside. How fantastic!

Arabic Meaning

١ – تقليدى
٢ – مستدير الشكل
٣ – أسباب / تفسيرات
٤ – زلزال
٥ – جليد
٦ – دافئ
٧ – بارد
٨ – مستطيل
٩ – مربع
١٠ – مساحة / فراغ



Say it correctly

* yurt — تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة (turn) مع اختلاف الصوتين الأول والأخير.
* igloo — ينطق حرف (i) في هذه الكلمة، مثل نطق حرف (e) في كلمة (egg).



Tapescript

Basel : Hi, I'm Basel. These are the important events[1] in my life.
I was born in 2007 in Alexandria. I started school in 2012.
I liked my school!
I learned to ride a bike[2] in 2013. I love my bike!
In 2018, we moved house[3]. We live in Cairo now.
in 2019, we went on holiday to the Red Sea. It was amazing!
In 2023 I will climb Mount Kilimanjaro - I hope so anyway!

Arabic Meaning

١ – أحداث
٢ – يركب دراجة
٣ – ينتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزّل)

Tapescript



Voice : Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. He then moved to Switzerland to play for Basel in 2012.
In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool. Mohamed Salah was also African Footballer of the Year in 2017, and in 2019, he won the European Champions League[1] with Liverpool.

Arabic Meaning

١ – دورى الابطال الأوروبى



Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is an area that you can move around in. (SB)
   a) Spice b) Piece c) Space d) Peace
2. .... is nice temperature that is hot but not too hot. (SB)
   a) Cool b) Cold c) Warm d) Worm
3. The ship's window is round. This .... is stronger than a square window. (WB)
   a) shop b) ship c) chip d) shape
4. A/An .... happens when the ground suddenly moves. (SB)
   a) earthquake b) igloo c) volcano d) yurt
5. The teacher asked us to use our .... and draw a picture.
   a) station b) temperature c) pollution d) imagination

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's important to .... a plan before starting a task.
   a) draw b) paint c) move d) divide
2. My mother wants to buy a new sofa, but I don't think we have .... for it. (WB)
   a) space b) house c) shape d) task
3. We use blankets to .... us warm.
   a) think b) do c) keep d) have
4. Our living room window is large and square so we can look .... of it. (WB)
   a) for b) at c) out d) up
5. Children in Egypt .... school at the age at six.
   a) keep b) start c) end d) finish
6. Salah is playing .... Liverpool at present.
   a) to b) about c) before d) for
7. This test is .... than the one we took last week.
   a) easier b) easiest c) easy d) the easiest
8. My aunt made us some bread and when we ate it, it was still .... (WB)
   a) worm b) cold c) warm d) modern
9. This is a triangular shape, it is a .... (WB)
   a) rectangle b) triangle c) circle d) square



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. I like -------- music.
   a poor b dangerous c expensive d traditional
2. No one is at --------, I'm alone.
   a house b home c homeless d housing
3. When Adel met me, he gave me a -------- greeting.
   a worm b cold c call d warm

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. In the future, cars <u>want</u> use petrol. (------------)
2. We can make old plastic <u>to</u> new bags. (------------)

Writing Skills

How to plan a creative writing task

1. First, think of as many ideas as you can. What will the house look like? What will it be made of? What will be different to houses of today? You can write down or draw your ideas. Use your imagination and have fun!
2. Then, decide which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time.
3. Finally, think about your best ideas in more detail. How can you make the ideas work? Make a plan (maybe in a diagram or drawing). You can change any ideas that don't work.

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

1 What do you think holidays will be like in the year 2050?

The world will change a lot in 2050. We will spend our holidays in a different way. We won't go to beaches. We will go to other planets or to the moon! We won't use planes. We won't drive our cars to go on holidays. There will be rockets to take us there. They will be very fast. The journey will take few hours. We will walk on the moon and see the Earth from there. Life will be different and enjoyable. So I hope I will live to try this. However, all this may be just dreams and may not happen.

2 Things in your home

We all live in homes. We have many things. in our homes. All homes have rooms, bedrooms, living rooms, bathrooms and kitchens. All the rooms have doors and windows. They are made of wood and glass. We paint walls, doors and windows the colours we choose. Kitchens have many things in them. Although I don't know the materials most things are made of, I can use them. My room has many things in it. Everyone likes their home. I like my home very much.

3 A famous person

Mohammed Salah was born in 15 June 1992. He is an Egyptian footballer who plays for Liverpool in England. He also plays for the Egyptian National Team. He is one of the best players in the world. He is known for his speed. Salah started playing for an Egyptian club called El Mokawloon. He got many international prizes. He helped the Egyptian National Team to take part in the World Cup competition in 2018. He scores many wonderful goals with Liverpool. Many people in the world like him. All the Egyptians are proud of him.

General Exercises on Unit 10



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Yara : Do you have a car, Yomna?

Yomna : Yes, I do.

Yara : What do you think cars will be like in the ① ....?

Yomna : I think there will be ② .... cars.

Yara : I ③ .... I think we'll all use electric cars.

Yomna : I think there ④ .... be driverless cars.

Yara : I think so

Yomna : Life will be different in the future.

Yara : I think we will ⑤ .... under the sea.

Yomna : I agree with you.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you know what this T-shirt .... made of?
   a) are b) were c) have d) is
2. .... are usually made of plastic.
   a) Cars b) Houses c) Tables d) Toys
3. I wanted to eat chips, but there .... any in the kitchen.
   a) were b) wasn't c) weren't d) was

WB

4. A window is usually made of wood and ....

a glass
b wool
c stone
d plastic

5. .... there any oil in that bottle?

a Are
b Is
c Has
d Were

6. Who .... you English next year?

a will teach
b teach
c has taught
d taught

7. The mechanic will .... repairing my car tomorrow.

a finishes
b finishing
c to finish
d finish

SB

8. In 2080, we will live in cities .... the sea.

a under
b before
c behind
d about

9. When, do you think, they .... complete this bridge?

a won't
b are
c will
d were

SB

10. In 2080, we will build houses using 3D ....

a cars
b planes
c printers
d turbines

11. The .... of the house became wet because of the rain.

a loaf
b leaf
c roof
d wolf

12. Don't touch the ....; it's very hot.

a oven
b cushion
c colour
d ice cream

13. There are solar .... on some buses for power nowadays.

a planes
b panels
c plans
d planets

14. This blackboard has a .... shape.

a rectangular
b cooler
c solar
d rectangle

15. Sit down, there is a .... for you.

a peace
b sale
c space
d spice

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The curtains **is** made from wool. SB (..............)
2. There **was** any juice in the fridge. (..............)
3. **When** is your bag made of? SB (..............)
4. In 2050, we **are** use electric cars. (..............)

5. In the **past**, cars will run on water. (..........

6. We **are** produce electricity from rubbish in the future. (..........

4 ➤ **Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:** يجاب عنه قبل الامتحان

"Things in your home"

....

....

....

....

TEST 5 UNIT 10

A Listening

1 ➤ **Listen. Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. Many traditional houses in the past were ....
   - a triangular
   - b square
   - c round
   - d cubic
2. A round shape means the building is very ....
   - a bad
   - b weak
   - c tall
   - d strong
3. A round shape is important when there is a/an ....
   - a earthquake
   - b volcano
   - c storm
   - d rain
4. .... in the past were round.
   - a Schools
   - b Houses
   - c Streets
   - d Pyramids

B Language Functions

2 ➤ **Complete the following dialogue:**

Ziad : Look at my things, Ashraf.

Ashraf : I see. You have a lot of things.

Ziad : What are these pencils ❶ ....

Ashraf : They are made of wood.

Ziad : What ② .... this wallet made of?

Ashraf : I think it's made of ③ ....

Ziad : What is your bag made of?

Ashraf : I'm not ④ .... I think it is made of cotton.

Ziad : Is your tablet made of plastic?

Ashraf : ⑤ ...., it is.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

Life in the future will be very different. Houses will have solar energy. Everyone will have robots at home. House robots will do lots of different things around the house: <u>they</u> will clean, they will go shopping. They will help look after the children, they will drive parents to their place of work.

Every person in a house will own a computer. Students won't go to school any more. They will have lessons on their computer every day. There will be no televisions and everyone will watch TV on their computers.

I think people won't travel by car. Everyone will use electric buses and trains with robot drivers. I think people will go on holiday to the moon in space rockets. Space tourism will be the most popular type of holiday in the future.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why will houses be different in the future?

....

2. What will house robots do?

....

3. Do you like to live in the future? Why/Why not?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**they**" refers to ....

a houses b children c things d robots

5. People will travel to the moon in ....

a electric buses b space rockets c space robots d electric cars

6. .... will drive buses and trains in the future.

a Drivers b Computers c Robots d Children

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There -------- any computers in the past.
   a were   b aren't   c wasn't   d we
2. --------- are machines which can do many things for us. Som talk.
   a Panels   b Robots   c Rockets   d Tu
3. This is a --------- shape. It's a circle.
   a rectangular   b triangular   c circular   d cu
4. A famous Egyptian architect --------- the Cairo Tower.
   a designed   b drove   c expressed   d sig
5. A/An -------- car does not use petrol.
   a ordinary   b driverless   c electric   d win
6. Will there --------- planes that will travel to the moon in the futu
   a is   b be   c are   d bee
7. Shoes are usually made of ---------.
   a metal   b cotton   c glass   d leat
8. We use --------- to build a wall.
   a bricks   b ovens   c roofs   d taps
9. Some houses fell to the ground after the ---------.
   a space   b earthquake   c earth   d tem
10. This brush is --------- plastic.
    a made   b making   c made of   d mak

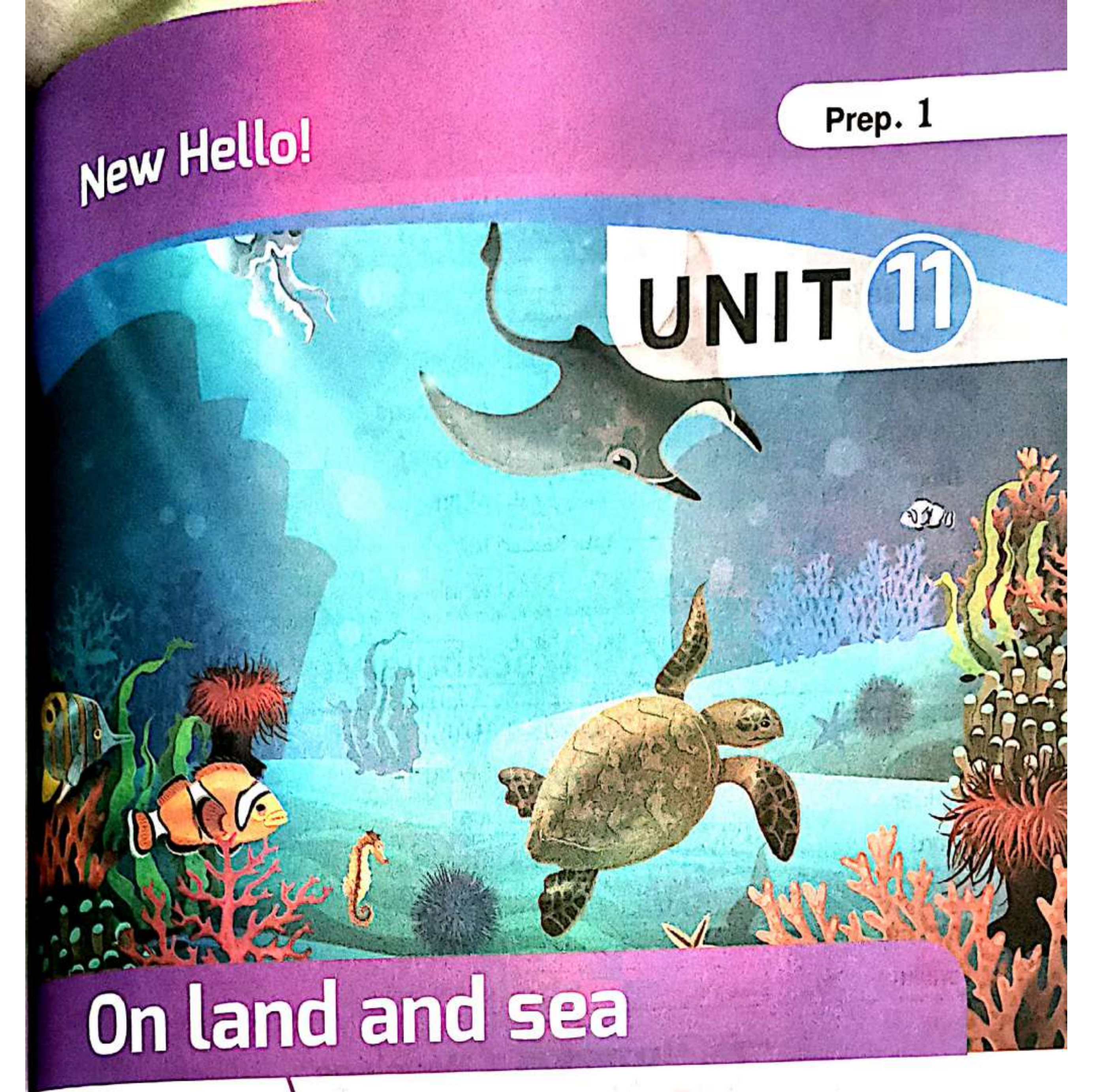
5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. **Are** there any mobile phones in ancient Egypt? (---
2. Who **are** you go to Alexandria with next weekend? (---
3. TVs are **making** of plastic and glass. (---
4. There isn't **some** water in this lake. (---

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: (الامتحان

"A famous person"



On land and sea

Objectives

Reading:
A paragraph about sea life; a leaflet about plastic pollution; The Old Man and the Sea

Writing:
Writing rules; writing an advertisement; a text explaining a beach clean-up day

Listening:
A talk at a nature reserve

Speaking:
Talking about saving the environment

Language:
Zero conditional; must / mustn't; should / shouldn't; asking for, giving and sequencing instructions

Life Skills:
Collaboration; setting clear goals

"Key Vocabulary"

coral reef(s)	شعب مرجانى (الشعاب المرجانية)	flat	مسطح/مستو
danger(s)	خطر (مخاطر)	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
shell	قوقعة/صدفة	poisonous	سام
octopus	أخطبوط	stingray	سمك الرّاى اللاسع
sting	يلدغ / يلسع	shark	سمكة القرش
turtle	سلحفاة مائية	tail	ذيل
ocean	محيط	whale	حوت

Vocabulary

sea animal	حيوان بحرى	land	يابسة/ أرض
bee	نحلة	heavy	ثقيل
spider	عنكبوت	ice	ثلج
hard	صلب	jump (ed)	يقفز
funny	مضحك	touch (ed)	يلمس
sea life	حيوانات بحرية	turn (ed)	يتحول
snake	ثعبان	laugh (ed)	يضحك

Words & Meanings

coral reef(s)	شعب مرجانى (الشعاب المرجانية)	a hard area of something like rock made from small sea animals
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	a sea animal with a soft body that you can see through
poisonous	سام	if something is poisonous, it can make you very ill or kill you
shark	سمكة القرش	a large, dangerous sea animal with sharp teeth
shell	قوقعة/صدفة	the hard part on the outside of a turtle, nut etc.
sting	يلدغ / يلسع	if an animal stings you, it hurts you to protect itself
stingray	سمك الرّاى اللاسع	a big, flat fish with a long tail that can sting
tail	ذيل	the part that is at the end of an animal's body
turtle	سلحفاة مائية	a large sea animal with a hard shell on its back
whale	حوت	the largest sea animal in the world

Expressions

feel ill / tired	يشعر بالمرض / بالتعب
watch TV	يشاهد التليفزيون
get home	يصل للمنزل
get a test	يؤدى اختبار
one of the most dangerous..	واحدة من أخطر..

Prepositions

jump out of	يقفز خارجًا من
in danger	فى خطر
protect from	يحمى من
hit with	يضرب بـــ
on land / sea	على اليابسة / فى البحر
go into	يدخل فى
go to bed	يذهب للنوم
turn to	يتحول إلى

Word Differences

dangerous	خطير	danger	خطر
sting	يلدغ / يلسع	string	خيط
live	يعيش	life	حياة
sea	بحر	see	يرى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple
lose	يفقد	lost
grow	ينمو	grew
come	يأتى	came
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up

Present		Past simple
hit	يضرب	hit
get	يحصل على	got
forget	ينسى	forgot
sting	يلدغ / يلسع	stung



1 hard

يمكن أن نستخدم كلمة **(hard)** بأكثر من معنى حسب السياق

- **hard (adj)** صلب / صعب / خشن
- **hard (adv.)** بجد

ex. The turtle has a hard shell.

ex. I couldn't answer the question because it was hard.

ex. You should study hard.

2 ➤ fell / fall / fill

- **feel (felt)** يشعر

  ex. I felt tired because I slept late.
- **fall (fell)** يسقط / يقع

  ex. He fell off the chair and broke his arm.
- **fill (filled)** يملأ

  ex. Ahmed filled the glass with water.

Reading



Dangers of the sea



The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean*[1]. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. A shark uses more than 20.000 teeth in its life.

So how do fish and sea animals protect themselves from danger?

A stingray[2] is a big, flat[3] fish and it lives in the ocean. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water!

A sea turtle[4] has a hard shell[5] to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast-The octopus[6] has got eight legs to help it!

Some sea life[7], like the jellyfish[8], is poisonous[9]. It stings[10] you when you touch it.

What about the whale*[11]? These big, heavy animals hit with their big tails[12]!

Arabic Meaning

١- محيط
٢- سمك الرّاي اللاسع
٣- مسطح / مستو
٤- سلحفاه مائية
٥- صدفة
٦- أخطبوط
٧- حياة بحرية
٨- قنديل البحر
٩- سام
١٠- يلدغ- يلسع
١١- حوت
١٢- ذيول



Say it correctly

- * ocean — ينطق الجزء الملون فى هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (ش).
- * whale — تنطق كلمة (whale) مثل كلمة (sail) مع اختلاف الصوت الأول.

Exercises  Lesson 1



I Check Up Exercises

➤ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A/An .... can sting you. WB

   a) turtle   b) coral reef   c) ocean   d) stingray

2. A sea turtle has a hard .... to protect it. SB

   a) shelf   b) shell   c) ship   d) shore

3. If something is ...., it can make you very ill or kill you. SB

   a) funny   b) tired   c) poisonous   d) noisy

4. Large sea animals live in the ---------- .
a ocean b pond c pool d canal

5. A/An --------- has eight legs. WB
a stingray b shark c whale d octopus

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some sea life, like the jellyfish, is poisonous. It ---------- you when you touch it. SB
a kicks b stings c rings d grows

2. A ball is round. It's not --------- .
a funny b dark c noisy d flat

3. A/An --------- is a large sea.
a ocean b river c lake d pond

4. The --------- is one of the most dangerous sea animals. SB
a crab b turtle c shark d tiger

5. What can we do to protect ourselves --------- bad weather?
a with b from c by d to

6. I was --------- danger when the dog attacked me.
a on b from c in d at

7. Tourists dive into the Red Sea to see the --------- .
a camels b coral reefs c trees d stars

8. I found many --------- on the beach and I played with them.
a sharks b oceans c shells d ships

9. A monkey has a long --------- .
a tail b neck c nose d shell

10. What should we do to --------- sea life?
a harm b hurt c hate d protect



The zero conditional الحالة الصفرية للجمل الشرطية

Form التكوين

If / When → present simple, → present simple
إذا - لو / عندما مضارع بسيط مضارع بسيط

- يمكن أن تأتى **if / when** فى وسط الجملة.

present simple → if / when → present simple

Usage الاستخدام

• تستخدم الحالة الصفرية للجمل الشرطية للتعبير عن:

١- فعل يحدث دائماً بشرط عند حدوث فعل آخر.

ex. If it rains, we get water.
= We get water if it rains.

ex. When it's late, I feel tired.
= I feel tired when it's late.

٢- حدث في المضارع البسيط وما يترتب عليه من نتائج.

ex. If / When I'm tired, I go to bed.
= I go to bed if / when I'm tired.

٣- للتعبير عن حقائق (ترتبط بالطبيعة / والفيزياء والفلك....)

ex. If you heat ice, it melts.

٤- لاحظ أن المضارع البسيط من فعل (have) هو (have / has) ومن فعل (be) هو (am / is / are).

ex. If she has much money, she buys clothes.

ex. Ali sees a doctor if he is ill.

لاحظ الآتى:

١- تستخدم when مثلها مثل if في الحالة الشرطية الصفرية.

ex. If / When ice gets warm, it becomes water.

٢- للسؤال بمعنى (ماذا سيحدث إذا......) فى الحالة الصفرية نستخدم:

What happens if / when + فاعل + فعل في المضارع البسيط ....?

ex. A: What happens if / when we put ice in the sun?
B: It becomes water.





Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you touch a jellyfish, it .... you. SB
   a sting b stings c stung d stinging
2. When a stingray .... a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water. SB
   a knew b know c knowing d knows
3. .... a shark loses a tooth, it grows a new one. SB
   a But b If c Where d What
4. The octopus swims away fast .... it's in danger. SB
   a why b what c when d how
5. Plants die if they .... enough water.
   a don't get b get c doesn't get d got

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I drink **where** I feel thirsty. (............)
2. If I **didn't** know an English word, I use my dictionary. (............)
3. When a turtle **be** in danger, it goes into its shell. SB (............)
4. When it **was** very cold, water turns to ice. WB (............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... I feel ill, I go to the doctor.
   a When b What c Where d Why
2. If ice becomes warm, we .... water.
   a getting b gets c got d get
3. When I .... hungry, I have something to eat. SB
   a was b were c am d be
4. If we are noisy in class, our teacher usually .... us. SB
   a punish b punishes c punished d punishing

5. If it --------- very hot, I turn on the fan.
   a is   b was   c were   d are   SB
6. If I feel tired, I --------- to bed.
   a going   b went   c go   d goes   SB
7. If I --------- my pencil case, I often feel sad.
   a forgot   b forget   c forgets   d forgetting   SB
8. When I --------- ill, I go to bed.
   a feels   b felt   c feeling   d feel   WB
9. If my sister --------- a lot of TV, she feels tired.
   a watches   b watch   c watched   d watching   WB

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. If I <u>was</u> thirsty, I drink water. (----------)
2. When the phone rings, I <u>answered</u> it. (----------)
3. <u>What</u> I feel hot, I turn on the fan. (----------)
4. Kenzy feels ill if she <u>travel</u> on a boat. (----------)
5. If it is dark, I <u>couldn't</u> see. (----------)

Lessons 2 & 3

SB pages 46-49 WB pages 101-102

"Key Vocabulary"

environment	بيئة	throw away	يتخلص من
planet	كوكب	rubbish	قمامة
fishing line	صنارة	recycle (d)	يعيد استخدام
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية		

Vocabulary

everywhere	فى كل مكان	Ras Mohammed reserve	محمية راس محمد
plastic	بلاستيك	around	حوالى / تقريباً
rule	قانون / قاعدة	knife (knives)	سكينة (سكاكين)
traffic rules	قواعد المرور	careful	حريص
paper	ورق	school work	عمل مدرسى
dirty	قذر/متسخ	home	منزل / موطن
through	خلال	visit (n)	زيارة
decision	قرار	save (d)	ينقذ
own	ملِك	share (d)	يشارك
grass	حشائش	die (d)	يموت
piece	جزء / قطعة	frighten (ed)	يخيف / يرعب
shopping bag	حقيبة تسوق	clean (ed) (adj)	ينظف / نظيف

Words & Meanings

environment	البيئة	the world around us
recycle	يعيد استخدام	use again
rubbish	قمامة	things we do not need, like old paper
throw away	يتخلص من	get rid of[1] what you do not need
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	an area of land used to protect nature, animal and plants
fishing line	صنارة	a thin line used to catch a fish[2]
planet	كوكب	where we live

Arabic Meaning
١- يتخلص من
٢- يصطاد سمكة

Unit 11

Expressions

about 100 years old	عمره حوالى مائة عام
take a long time	يستغرق وقتا طويلاً
stop trying	يتوقف عن المحاولة
just once	مرة واحدة
walk away from	يمشى بعيداً عن
work together	يعملوا معاً

Prepositions

use... for	يستخدم... لـ
for a long time	لوقت طويل
die from	يموت بسبب
get rid of	يتخلص من
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
on roads	فى الطرقات
share.... with	يشارك... مع
famous for	مشهور بـ
take... from	يأخذ... من
walk into	يسير إلى داخل
take off	يخلع ملابس
bad for	ضار لـ
angry with	غاضب من
agree with	يتفق مع

Word Differences

save	ينقذ / يوفر	safe	آمن
recycle	يعيد استخدام	cycle	يركب دراجة
planet	كوكب	plant	نبات
die from	يموت من	die out	ينقرض

Verbs & Nouns that come together

do activities يعمل نشاطات	make decisions يتخذ قرارات	share ideas يتشارك الأفكار
take turns يتبادل الأدوار	throw rubbish يلقى قمامة	feed birds يطعم الطيور
make noise يُحدث ضوضاء	follow traffic rules يتبع قواعد المرور	recycle plastic يعيد استخدام البلاستيك

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
throw away	يتخلص من	threw away	take off	يخلع ملابس	took off
take	يستغرق	took	give	يعطى	gave



1 take

- يمكن للفعل (take) أن ياتى بأكثر من معنى حسب سياق الجملة:
يركب (مواصلة) / يلتقط (صورة) / يستغرق (وقتاً) / يأخذ

- **take**
  ex. She takes her shopping bag to the market.
  ex. It will take a long time to answer the test.
  ex. I took many photos at the zoo yesterday.
  ex. He takes the bus to school.

2 stop + to + inf / stop + ing

- **stop + to + inf.** يتوقف كى يفعل
  ex. He stopped to have a drink.
- **stop + v-ing** يتوقف عن فعل
  ex. He stopped smoking.

3 paper / glass

- **paper/ a paper** ورق / جريدة
  ex. Books are made of paper.
  ex. My father reads the papers every day.
- **glass / a glass** زجاج / كوب زجاجى
  ex. Windows are made of glass.
  ex. I'd like a glass of water.

Reading

We must save our planet!



Plastic(1) is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment(2) for a very long time.

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can recycle(3) some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean(4).

Plastic is poisonous(5) when animals eat it.

Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.

We must try to use other materials(6) - paper and glass, for example - because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag(7), we mustn't throw away(8) these bags in rivers. It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish(9) from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet(10)!

Arabic Meaning

١- البلاستيك
٢- البيئة
٣- يعيد استخدام
٤- المحيط
٥- سام
٦- مواد خام
٧- حقيبة تسوق
٨- يتخلص من
٩- قمامة
١٠- كوكب



Arabic Meaning

١- محمية طبيعية
٢- يخيف
٣- موطن
٤- وجبة في الهواء الطلق
٥- قمامة

Teacher :

We're going to visit this nature reserve[1]* today. We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many important birds, animals and plants live here, so we must be careful what we do.

First, you mustn't make a lot of noise! You'll frighten[2] the animals and birds. Secondly, we must not leave the road through the reserve. The animals and birds live in the plants next to the road and you don't want to walk into their homes[3], do you?

Now I know we're going to have a picnic[4] lunch later, but you mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. They must find their own food. They mustn't think that all their food will come from you!

Next, you must take all your rubbish[5] with you when you leave. Some animals think that plastic is food, but they mustn't eat it, it is very bad for them.

Finally, you must remember to work together and write what you see. You can write about your visit to the reserve for the project.



• reserve

* ينطق حرف (s) في هذه الكلمة مثل صوت (z).

Reading



Ras Mohammed



Ras Mohammed reserve[1] is famous for its birds and animals. Many people go diving in the coral reefs[2] here to see the many beautiful fish and turtles. If you want to dive here, first you must pay around LE I 00. When you dive, you mustn't touch or give food to any of the fish. You must only use knives[3] to cut fishing lines[4] and you must never take any fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live here, so you must be careful!

Arabic Meaning

١- محمية راس محمد
٢- الشعاب المرجانية
٣- سكاكين
٤- صنارة



Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... is the world around us.

   a) plastic   b) environment   c) rubbish   d) natural reserve

2. We can --------- rubbish and get a lot of money.
   a throw   b die   c cycle   d recycle
3. Earth is our --------- .
   a plant   b plate   c planet   d plan
4. We mustn't --------- plastic bags in rivers.
   a die from   b throw away   c take off   d wake up
5. Ahmed is helpful. He always --------- his ideas with others.
   a shares   b loses   c touches   d forgets

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We --------- of rubbish by putting it in trash bins.
   a jump out   b get rid   c run away   d feel tired
2. Paper and glass are easier to recycle than --------- .
   a air   b water   c plastic   d soil
3. Every year, more than 100.000 sea animals and birds --------- from plastic. SB
   a die   b buy   c live   d stay
4. Trees are very good for our --------- because they give us clean air. WB
   a rubbish   b environment   c plastic   d road
5. Earth is one of eight --------- that go around the sun. WB
   a planets   b planes   c plates   d plants
6. We don't need that dirty piece of paper. You can put it with the --------- . WB
   a environment   b beach   c planet   d rubbish
7. You can see birds and animals in the Ras Mohammed --------- . WB
   a beach   b ocean   c reserve   d river
8. Osman never --------- all the decisions by himself. He always asks his father.
   a makes   b does   c gives   d looks
9. **A:** I think our team will win. **B:** I don't agree --------- you.
   a on   b with   c from   d of
10. The students take --------- to answer the questions.
   a turns   b trains   c trees   d tables
11. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can --------- them. WB
   a cycle   b recycle   c cook   d hear



must / mustn't, should/ shouldn't
التعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام / النصيحة

1 must + inf.

نستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بفعل شيء ما (في المضارع).

ex. We must save our planet.

2 mustn't + inf.

نستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن النهي / التحريم (في المضارع).

ex. We mustn't throw rubbish into the ocean.

3 should / shouldn't (for advice)

نستخدم (should / shouldn't) للنصيحة كما يلي:

فاعل (كل الضمائر)+ should / shouldn't + Inf. مصدر الفعل

Affirmative / إثبات

• النصيحة بفعل شيء نستخدم (should)

ex. We should recycle more.

Negative / النفي

• النصيحة بعدم فعل شيء نستخدم should not (shouldn't)

ex. We shouldn't use plastic bags just once.

Question / السؤال

• للسؤال عن النصيحة بـ «هل...؟» نستخدم:

Should + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل....?

ex. Should I write my name on my paper?
- Yes, you should. - No, you shouldn't.

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + should + فاعل + Inf.مصدر الفعل...?

ex. When should I start to revise for the exam?
- Three days before the exam.

لاحظ الآتى:

- لا تستخدم (**to**) قبل مصدر الفعل الذى يأتى بعد must / mustn't - should / shouldn't
  واعلم أن المصدر من (**am , is , are**) هو (**be**) ومن (**have, has**) هو (**have**)

ex. You must be careful when you cross the road.
ex. He must have his calculator with him.

- فى النفى ضع **not (n't)** مباشرة بعد (**must / should**) وليس بعد الفعل.

~~must go not~~ ✗ must not (mustn't) go. ✓



Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You .... listen to other students' ideas.
   a must b shouldn't c mustn't d can't
2. You .... walk in the mountain when the weather is bad. It's dangerous.
   a should b must c can d mustn't
3. The animals.......... eat plastic. It is very bad for them. **SB**
   a should b mustn't c must d can
4. You .... play games on roads. A car may hit you.
   a must b should c mustn't d can
5. You .... share your ideas with others. **SB**
   a should b mustn't c shouldn't d can't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You should <u>studying</u> hard. (..............)
2. We mustn't <u>to make</u> a lot of noise at home. (..............)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you cross a road, first you .... find a safe place to cross. **WB**
   a must b shouldn't c can't d mustn't

2. You .... look left and right when you cross a road.

   a mustn't   b can't   c must

3. We .... throw away rubbish in rivers.

   a should   b mustn't   c can

4. You .... shout in the classroom.

   a must   b can   c should

5. You look tired, you .... see a doctor.

   a should   b mustn't   c shouldn't

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What **I should** do if I feel tired?
2. You **shouldn't** eat healthy food.
3. You **must** cross the road. It's dangerous.
4. You **should** eat too many sweets. It's unhealthy.

3 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How we can help our environment"

....

....

....

....

SB pages 50-52 WB pages 103-106

"Key Vocabulary"

pot	إناء	seed	بذرة
soil	تربة (زراعية)	fisherman (fishermen)	صياد سمك
ground	أرض	worried	قَلِق
weak	ضعيف	respected	محترم
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	respect (ed)	يحترم
hole	فتحة / ثقب	cover (ed)	يغطي

Vocabulary

2 cm deep	عمق ٢ سم	plastic material	مادة بلاستيك
rubbish bags	أكياس قمامة	plastic rubbish	قمامة من البلاستيك
nut	نواة ثمرة/ حبة مكسرات	plastic pot	إناء بلاستيك
local groups	مجموعات محلية	healthy	صحي
local radio station	محطة الإذاعة المحلية	gloves	قفازات
empty space	مساحة فارغة	posters	ملصقات
advertisement	إعلان	tiny	صغير جدًا
finger	إصبع اليد	leaflet	منشور / كتيب
How deep	كم عمق	press (ed)	يضغط
bone	عظمة	fish (ed)	يصطاد سمك
brave	شجاع	return (ed)	يعود / يرجع
headphones	سماعات الرأس	water (ed)	يروى «بالماء»
snack	وجبة خفيفة	pull (ed)	يسحب

Words & Meanings

ground أرض	the top part of the Earth, where we stand
soil تربة (زراعية)	what plants grow in
hole فتحة / ثقب	an empty space in something
cover يغطي	put something over something else to protect or hide it
seed بذرة	a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants
pot إناء	a small container

Expressions

keep the air healthy	يحافظ على نقاء الهواء
keep water clean	يحافظ على نظافة المياه
make a phone call	يجري مكالمة هاتفية
make a sandwich	يعد ساندويتش
make something from recycled plastic	يصنع شيئ من البلاستيك معاد الاستخدام
play a sport or game	يلعب رياضة أو لعبة
feel worried	يشعر بالقلق
feel weak	يشعر بالضعف
feel well	يشعر بتحسن
more than ever	أكثر مما سبق
get well	يتعافى
catch fish	يصطاد سمك

Prepositions

at the bottom of	في قاع
at the end of	في نهاية (شيء)
look at	ينظر إلى
fill ... with	يملأ ... بـ
cover ... with	يغطي ... بـ
on the beach	على الشاطئ
on headphones	على سماعات الرأس
for a long time	لوقت طويل
pull.. to / into	يسحب.. إلى الداخل

Verbs & Nouns that come together

catch

catch a fish	يصطاد سمكة
catch an illness	يصاب بمرض
catch a thief	يقبض على لص
catch a plane, train or bus	يلحق بطائرة / قطار / أتوبيس
catch a ball	يمسك بكرة

Compound Nouns

- نستخدم بعض الأسماء والصفات سويًا لنكونُ اسم جديد مركب (compound noun)
- أحيانا يكون الاسم متصل وأحيانا أخرى يكون منفصل مثل:

coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
fishing line	صنارة
jellyfish	قنديل البحر
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
recycled plastic	بلاستيك معاد استخدامه

Word Differences

pot	إناء
pan	مقلاة «طاسة»
skeleton	هيكل عظمى
skull	جمجمة
fish	يصطاد سمك
hunt	يصطاد طيور / حيوانات

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
catch	يصطاد	caught	hide	يختفى / يخفى	hid
feel	يشعر	felt	see	يرى	saw



Language Notes

too much / too many

- **too much** — كثير جدًا (يأتى بعدها اسم لا يُعد)

  ex. Don't give the plant too much water.

- **too many** — كثير جدًا (يأتى بعدها اسم يُعد)

  ex. It's bad to eat too many sweets.

Reading



Plant a tree today!



Do you want to help save our planet?
Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air healthy[1].
You can plant a nut[2] or the seed[3] of a fruit.

1. First, wash the plastic pot[4] and dry it.
2. Second, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot.
3. Then, fill the pot with soil[5].
4. Next, press[6] your finger into the soil and make a small hole[7] about 2 cm deep.
5. Plant the seed in the hole and cover[8] it with soil.
6. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place.
7. Water[9] it every day. (Don't give it too much water.)
8. When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground.

Arabic Meaning

١- صحى
٢- نواة ثمرة
٣- بذرة
٤- إناء
٥- تربة (زراعية)
٦- اضغط
٧- فتحة
٨- يغطى
٩- يروى



Tapescript

Adult : Do you want to help save our planet? Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air healthy. You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit.

Child : What should I do first?

Adult : First, wash an empty plastic pot and dry it. Secondly, put some small stones at the bottom of the pot.

Child : Then what should I do?

Adult : Then, fill the pot with soil.

Child : Like this?

Adult : Yes, that's right! The next thing you do is, press your finger into the soil and make a small hole.

Child : How deep must it be?

Adult : It must be 2 centimetres deep. Now plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place. The seed needs sun and water to make it grow.

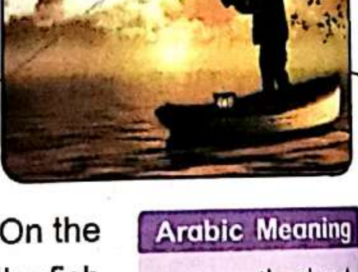
Child : Should I water it now?

Adult : Yes, now and every day. But don't give it too much water. It's going to grow big. When it grows too big for the pot, take it out of the soil and plant it in the ground. One day, when it is a big tree, you can say "I planted that"!

Reading



The Old Man and the Sea



by Ernest Hemingway

Santiago was an old fisherman[1]. He felt worried, because the last time he caught a fish was 84 days ago. On the 85th day, he felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line. But the fish was stronger than Santiago. It took two days for him to finally pull it to the boat. Then the sharks came. When Santiago returned to his home on the beach, he had no fish, only a skeleton[2].

He felt weak and slept for a long time. But the other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was brave[3] to catch it. Santiago lost the fish, but the other fishermen now respected[4] him more than ever.

Arabic Meaning

١- صياد سمك
٢- هيكل عظمى
٣- شجاع
٤- يحترم

Reading



We must clean our beach!

1- Where and when is the event?

- West Beach
- Saturday afternoon 2 p.m. - 5 p.m.

2- What do we need?

- rubbish bags, gloves[1] (to protect your hands), a bottle of water to drink and snacks[2] to eat!
- some people like listening to music on their headphones[3]!

3- Why must we clean the beaches?

- 100,000 pieces of plastic rubbish on this beach
- one plastic bottle can stay in our environment for up to 1,000 years (dangerous for animals and fish)

4- How can we tell people about our event?

- posters[4] (around school and town)
- emails to local groups[5]
- local radio station[6] or newspaper

5- What should we do with the rubbish we find?

- recycle it
- find a new use for it
- make art with it

Arabic Meaning

١- قفازات
٢- وجبات خفيفة
٣- سماعات رأس
٤- ملصقات
٥- مجموعات محلية
٦- محطة الإذاعة المحلية

Exercises on Lessons 4, 5 & 6

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The top part of the Earth, where we stand is the .... WB
   a) floor b) sky c) ground d) sea
2. Plants grow in .... WB
   a) floor b) soil c) sail d) mail
3. A .... is an empty space in something. WB
   a) hole b) pole c) ball d) role
4. He gets high marks so I .... him.
   a) protect b) respect c) recycle d) plant

5. A --------- is a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants. WB

a) soil b) pot c) stone d) seed

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lot of --------- catch fish from the Red Sea. WB
   a) teachers b) nurses c) fishermen d) engineers
2. My grandmother is 85 and knows a lot! We all --------- what she says. WB
   a) hate b) respect c) dislike d) throw
3. Ahmed lost his phone, so his mother was --------- when he didn't phone her. WB
   a) funny b) interesting c) worried d) excited
4. Judy felt very --------- after she was ill, but she is better now. WB
   a) weak b) strong c) happy d) active
5. In the museum, we saw a --------- of a very old animal. Its bones were very big. WB
   a) character b) hole c) seed d) skeleton
6. I planted the seeds in a plastic --------- .
   a) phone b) pot c) ground d) hole
7. I usually eat --------- between meals.
   a) snakes b) seeds c) snacks d) socks
8. Some people like listening to music on their --------- . SB
   a) headlines b) headphones c) headaches d) headmasters
9. To put something over something else to protect or hide it is to --------- . WB
   a) dry b) plant c) cover d) water
10. We plant seeds in the --------- .
    a) oil b) sand c) soil d) floor



Language Functions

Ask for and give instructions

السؤال عن وإعطاء تعليمات

• للسؤال عن التعليمات التى يجب اتباعها نقول:

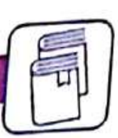
- What should I do first / next / after that?
- Should I (water it now)?

للإجابة وإعطاء التعليمات نستخدم الكلمات الآتية:

- Like this?
- First, / Second, / Then, / Next, / Finally?
- Yes, that's right!
- Yes, you should. / No, don't (give it too much water).

Exercises on Language Functions



WB

Complete the following dialogue:

Lama : I'd like to grow a tomato plant. What should I do first?

Mariam : ❶ --------------------------, find a sunny place in the garden.

Lama : Like this?

Mariam : Yes, that's right. ❷ -------, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.

Lama : OK. What should I do after that?

Mariam : ❸ --------------------------, make a small hole in the soil.

Lama : How deep must it be?

Mariam : About 2 cm. ❹ -----------, put some water in the hole so it is not dry.

Lama : Should I water it now?

Mariam : Yes, you should. ❺ ------------, put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.



Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. If a shark -------- a tooth, a new one grows.

   a misses   b loses   c forgets   d gets

2. How can we get -------- of plastic?
   - (a) ride
   - (b) drive
   - (c) rid
   - (d) hide
3. You must stop -------- your time.
   - (a) to waste
   - (b) waste
   - (c) wastes
   - (d) wasting

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. What **Ahmed must** take with him to school? (..........)
2. You **shouldn't to** throw away rubbish in the street. (..........)
3. If I feel sad, I usually **will watch** a movie. (..........)



Writing Skills

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

1 How we can help our environment

We must do our best to help our environment. There are many ways to do that. We can plant trees and flowers. We can use bikes instead of cars and buses. We mustn't throw away rubbish in rivers. We must recycle rubbish. Some people visit parks and beaches and leave a lot of rubbish there. This is very dangerous. It can kill animals and birds. There are people and companies that work on cleaning these places. They help their countries and help the environment as well. We must look after our environment.

2 Why it's important to recycle

Recycling is one of the best ways to get rid of rubbish. It is important to both the environment and us. Some materials stay in the environment for a very long time. If we just throw them, they will take a lot of space. They may be poisonous. They may harm animals and people. Many countries build factories for recycling materials. They produce new materials. People can buy these products in low prices. Recycling these materials will bring a lot of money. Recycling will save our planet.

3 A person you respect

My neighbour Salah is a farmer. I respect him. He is very polite and good to others. He has a farm. He gets up early in the morning and goes to his farm. He works hard there till sunset. He grows vegetables and fruits. On Fridays, Salah goes to the market to sell his plants. Everyone in our village likes and respect him because he is always helpful to them. He always gives poor people some of the plants that he grows. I like to go and visit him. I like talking to him very much. He always advises me on how to be a good farmer. I learn many useful things from Salah.

General Exercises On Unit 11 ?

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sama : What are you reading, Israa?

Israa : I'm reading a story.

Sama : What's its ❶ ....?

Israa : The Old Man and the Sea.

Sama : What does it tell us about?

Israa : It tells us about a good ❷ .... who caught a big fish.

Sama : Did any one ❸ .... him?

Israa : No, he caught it alone.

Sama : Did he sell it in the ❹ ....?

Israa : No, because sharks ❺ .... it and left it just a skeleton.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... we hear something funny, we all laugh. WB
   a What   b Who   c Whose   d When
2. When I .... home from school, I take a shower. WB
   a got   b gets   c getting   d get
3. It's very .... to swim in areas where sharks exist.
   a funny   b heavy   c noisy   d dangerous
4. Don't eat this food, it may be ....
   a good   b delicious   c poisonous   d tired
5. A stingray is a big, ... fish. SB
   a fit   b flat   c tiny   d small
6. Some spiders are dangerous. They attack and .... people.
   a kick   b protect   c sting   d turn
7. .... I feel tired, I have some rest.
   a When   b What   c Where   d Why
8. We use fishing .... to catch fish.
   a pipes   b bottles   c lines   d jackets

9. Alexandria is .... for its fine weather.
   a sorry b noisy c famous d tired
10. Tourists go .... to see the beautiful fish and turtles.
   a diving b driving c riding d running
11. Sharks live in Ras Mohammed reserve, so tourists must be ....
   a careless b helpful c useful d careful
12. The test was difficult, so it .... me a long time to answer it.
   a gave b took c did d talked
13. Many animals have .... People do not have one.
   a hands b tails c legs d arms
14. A .... is the biggest and heaviest sea animal.
   a shark b turtle c whale d stingray
15. Flowers and trees are good for our .... because they give us clean air.
   a environment b oceans c banks d trains

4 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. If I **woke** up late, I go to school late. WB (..........
2. If people **didn't** eat well, they become weak. WB (..........
3. When my father is at home, we **kept** calm. WB (..........
4. I always **laughed** when I watch that film. WB (..........
5. You should **are** helpful. (..........
6. If I **didn't** wear a jacket, I feel cold. (..........

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: باب عنه قبل الامتحان

"Why it's important to recycle"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى اخر الكتاب

1- The shark is a sea.......

a bird b plant c animal d insect

2- The shark is very.......

a safe b dangerous c funny d weak

3- The shark lives in the ....

a ocean b river c sky d jungle

4- Its .... grow all the time.

a legs b teeth c fins d heads

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Habiba : Can I ask you some questions, Mrs Sara?

Mrs Sara : ① ....

Habiba : What do you think the most dangerous sea animal is?

Mrs Sara : I think it is the ② ....

Habiba : The shark! But why?

Mrs Sara : ③ .... it has got very sharp teeth.

Habiba : So how do sea animals protect themselves from sharks?

Mrs Sara : Some sea animals jump out of water ④ .... it sees a shark.

Habiba : What about whales, these big heavy animals?

Mrs Sara : I don't think they need to protect themselves ⑤ .... sharks.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

Earth is mostly covered by water. Water covers about 70% of our world. Many plants and animals live in the water.

Lakes are small areas of fresh water on land. They are freshwater. **They** fill in with river water, rain, springs or water that comes down hills and mountains. Water in lakes gets to the sea by rivers. In the sea it mixes with saltwater.

Seas and oceans are large areas of water. They are saltwater. Different kinds of animals and plants live in saltwater and freshwater. Seas can also be very deep, sometimes miles deep! You can find whales, sharks, dolphins, stingrays and jellyfish in saltwater.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?

----

2. What are lakes?

----

3. How much of the Earth is covered by water?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "They" refers to --------- .
   a) plants   b) lakes   c) oceans   d) seas
5. Water in seas and oceans is mixed with --------- .
   a) salt   b) milk   c) sugar   d) oil
6. You can find whales in --------- .
   a) lakes   b) rivers   c) hills   d) oceans

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We don't need that dirty piece of paper. You can put it with the --------- . WB
   a) homework   b) rubbish   c) planet   d) food
2. In the museum we saw a --------- of a very old animal. Its bones were very big. WB
   a) hair   b) brain   c) skeleton   d) heart
3. Osman is a --------- . He catches a lot of fish.
   a) teacher   b) fishrman   c) doctor   d) farmer

4. We can .... plastic, glass and paper.
   a cycle   b recycle   c story   d kill
5. I used a fishing .... to catch the fish.
   a queue   b row   c line   d circle
6. Mum wears .... in the kitchen to protect her hands.
   a headphones   b skirts   c shoes   d gloves
7. We must put .... in the trash bin.
   a rubbish   b tomatoes   c skeletons   d fish
8. If water is 100°c, it .... WB
   a boil   b boiling   c boils   d boiled
9. You .... take a knife to school.
   a must   b should   c can   d mustn't
10. When Soha .... ill, she goes to hospital.
   a felt   b feel   c feels   d to feel

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. When we read books, we **knew** a lot of information. (..............)
2. Why **should** we use plastic bottles many times? (..............)
3. People **mustn't** keep drinking water clean. (..............)
4. If I **drank** much coffee, I don't sleep at night. (..............)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان) WB

"A person you respect"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

UNIT 12

My future

Objectives

Reading:

A interview with a marine biologist; a text about future plans; a text about traditional jobs in Africa; a text predicting the future

Writing:

A paragraph giving information about the future

Listening:

A description of a job; an interview with a marine biologist; people talking about their future plans

Speaking:

Describing and asking questions about jobs; talking about future times

Language:

Relative pronoun who; question tags; the first conditional

Life Skills:

Productivity: set clear goals



Lesson 1

SB pages 54-55 WB page 107

"Key Vocabulary"

machine	آلة	meeting	اجتماع
engine	محرك		

Jobs

accountant	محاسب	pilot	طيار
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	scientist	عالِم
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافى	writer	كاتب
architect	مهندس معمارى	businessman	رجل أعمال
engineer	مهندس	businesswoman	سيدة أعمال
dentist	طبيب اسنان		

Vocabulary

office	مكتب (مكان)	sick people	مرضي
interesting	شيق	money	نقود
person	شخص	plane	طائرة
building	مبنى	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية
footballer	لاعب كرة قدم	wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
article	مقالة	voluntary work	عمل تطوعى
computer programme	برنامج كمبيوتر	score (d)	يسجل/ يحرز

Words & Meanings

architect مهندس معمارى	a person who designs buildings
business man رجل أعمال **businesswoman** سيدة أعمال	a person who works in an office[1] and goes to meetings
computer programmer مبرمج كمبيوتر	a person who writes computer programs
dentist طبيب اسنان	a person who looks after[2] people's teeth
scientist عالِم	a person who studies or works with science
engineer مهندس	a person who designs[3] machines and engines
accountant محاسب	a person who works with money and numbers
photographer مصور فوتوغرافى	a person who takes[4] photographs for a job
writer كاتب	a person who writes books or articles[5]

Arabic Meaning

١- مكتب
٢- يعتني بـ
٣- يصمم
٤- يلتقط
٥- مقالات

Unit 12

Expressions

one day	يوما ما
I'd like to be	أريد أن أكون (اصبح)
take photographs	يلتقط صور
do sums	يحل مسائل
fly a plane	يطيّر طائرة
design (buildings / machines / engines)	يصمم (مبانٍ / ماكينات / محركات)
write (articles / computer programmes)	يكتب (مقالات / برامج كمبيوتر)
do voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعى
live next door	يعيش بالجوار

Prepositions

look after	يعتني بـ
work in an office	يعمل فى مكتب
in a wheelchair	على كرسى متحرك
work with money	يتعامل مع النقود
on the phone	على الهاتف
on TV	فى التليفزيون
good at	جيد فى

Word Differences

plane	طائرة	plan	خطة
teach	يدرّس	learn	يتعلم

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple
take	يأخذ / يلتقط	took
teach	يدرّس	taught
fly	يطير	flew
write	يكتب	wrote

Tapescript

1
Male : He looks after people's teeth. He's a dentist(1).

2
Male : She studies science. She's a scientist(2).

3
Male : He's a person who designs machines. He's an engineer(3).

4
Male : She works with numbers. She finds out how much money a business gets. She's an accountant(4).

5
Male : He takes photos. He's a photographer(5).

6
Male : She works in an office and goes to meetings. She's a businesswoman(6).

7
Male : He writes computer programs. He's a computer programmer(7).

8
Male : She writes books or articles. She's a writer(8).

9
Male : She designs buildings. She's an architect(9).

Arabic Meaning

١- طبيب أسنان
٢- عالِم
٣- مهندس
٤- محاسب
٥- مصور فوتوغرافي
٦- سيدة أعمال
٧- مبرمج كمبيوتر
٨- كاتب
٩- مهندس معماري



Tapescript

Randa: It's an interesting job, but it isn't an easy job. You usually work in an office. You have to do a lot of sums. I'm good at maths, so I'd like to do this job.

Reading

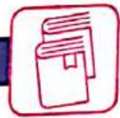


My uncle has got a very interesting[1] job. He's an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines[2] and engines[3]. My uncle designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day! My aunt is a businesswoman. That's an interesting job, too. A businesswoman and a businessman[4] are people who work in an office and go to meetings[5].

Arabic Meaning

١- شيق
٢- آلات
٣- محركات
٤- رجل أعمال
٥- اجتماعات





Exercises on Lessons 1

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An -------- works with money and numbers. (WB)
   a) architect b) writer c) accountant d) dentist
2. Salma is a/an ---------- . She writes computer programmes.
   a) writer b) computer programmer c) scientist d) pilot
3. Kenzy is a/an --------- . She takes a lot of photos.
   a) accountant b) engineer c) architect d) photographer
4. A/An --------- works in science. (WB)
   a) engineer b) scientist c) architect d) writer
5. A/An --------- designs buildings. (WB)
   a) engineer b) architect c) dentist d) pilot

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohamed Salah is a famous .... He scores a lot of goals.
   a pilot b dentist c architect d footballer
2. A/An .... is a man who works in business.
   a scientist b footballer c engineer d businessman
3. A/An......... looks after people's teeth.
   a pilot b dentist c teacher d accountant
4. Sayed is a/an .... He writes books and articles.
   a writer b scientist c pilot d businessman
5. I fly planes. I'm a/an ....
   a photographer b pilot c architect d accountant
6. A washing .... washes your clothes.
   a instrument b tool c machine d plane
7. A/An .... designs machines and engines.
   a accountant b footballer c engineer d teacher
8. There's something wrong with the .... of my car.
   a machine b glasses c keyboard d engine
9. I had an important .... with my manager yesterday.
   a picnic b fight c greeting d meeting
10. My aunt is a .... She has a big company.
   a businessman b businesswoman c footballer d pilot



Relative pronoun (who)
ضمير الوصل (who)

- تستخدم **who** لتحل محل فاعل عاقل بمعنى «الذي - التي - الذين - اللاتي» (وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها فعل):

ex. A businessman is a person who works in an office.

- وقد تستخدم لتحل محل مفعول عاقل (وفي هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير):

ex. Kareem, who we met, is an architect.

تذكر:

١- تستخدم **(which)** لتشير إلى الأشياء والحيوانات (غير العاقل):

ex. The story, which I read last night, was interesting.

٢- تستخدم **(where)** لتشير إلى المكان:

ex. We visited Ali in Luxor, where he lived.

٣- تستخدم **(when)** لتشير إلى الزمن:

ex. This is Alexandria in 1990, when my parents lived there.

٤- تستخدم **(whose)** لتشير إلى الملكية (يأتى بعدها اسم مملوك لاسم قبلها).

ex. Mr Adel, whose factory makes clothes, is very rich.

Exercises  Lesson  

Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB

1. A teacher is a person -------- teaches students.
   a when b where c who d which
2. Here's the present -------- I bought yesterday.
   a when b which c who d where

SB

3. A scientist is a person --------- studies science.
   a who b which c when d where
4. That's the lady -------- bag was stolen.
   a which b where c when d whose

SB

5. A pilot is a person --------- flies a plane.
   a which b when c where d who

Unit 12

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Mr Omar is the teacher **when** teaches us English. (..........)
2. That's the car **who** my dad bought. (..........)
3. Mariam is the girl **where** can run fast. (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That is the medal .... I won in the race.
   a when b whose c which d where
2. I met the player .... scored the goal.
   a when b who c where d which
3. The teacher .... teaches us maths is nice.
   a where b which c who d when
4. There is the hospital .... I was born in.
   a when b which c where d whose
5. The boy .... likes basketball is tall.
   a which b where c when d who
6. A photographer is a person .... takes photographs. SB
   a when b where c who d which
7. Friday is the day .... I meet my friends.
   a when b which c where d whose
8. My cousins are people .... call me every week on the phone. WB
   a who b which c where d when
9. Hany is the boy .... lives next door to me. WB
   a when b who c which d where
10. This is the scientist .... won the prize.
    a which b where c who d when

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That is the school **which** I learn. (..........)
2. The person **when** helps me a lot is my father. (..........)
3. I don't know **where** takes my pen. (..........)

Lesson 2

SB pages 56-57 W/B page 108

"Key Vocabulary"

marine biologist	عالم أحياء مائية	result	نتيجة
laboratory	معمل	ocean	محيط
terrible	فظيع	test (ed) (n)	يختبر/اختبار

Vocabulary

Neweiba	مدينة نويبع	The Atlantic	المحيط الاطلنطى
especially	خصوصًا	advice	نصيحة
forest	غابة	weather	الطقس
dream job	وظيفة الأحلام	Australia	استراليا
interesting	شيق	French	اللغة الفرنسية
different	مختلف	interview (ed)	يجرى مقابلة
around	حول	collect (ed)	يجمع
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	record (ed)	يسجل
research	بحث علمى	volunteer (ed)	يتطوع
useless	بلا فائدة	dive (n) (ed)	غوص / يغوص
boring	ممل		

Words & Meanings

marine biologist عالم أحياء مائية	a person who studies the ocean and the animals and plants in it	
test يختبر	check or do a scientific[1] experiment[2] on something	
laboratory معمل	a place where scientists[3] work and do experiments	

Arabic Meaning
١- علمي
٢- تجربة
٣- علماء

Unit 12

Expressions

What's your day like?	كيف كان يومك؟
go diving = go for a dive	يذهب للغوص
look after	يعتني بـــ
do well	يؤدي جيدًا
sound like a dream	يبدو كحلم

Prepositions

good at	جيد في
at the moment	في هذه اللحظة
on some days	في بعض الايام
on the computer	على الكمبيوتر
results of	نتائج لـ
learn about	يتعلم عن/يعرف عن
volunteer for	يتطوع من أجل



Present	Past simple	Present	Past simple
spend يقضي وقت/ينفق	spent	forget ينسى	forgot

Language Notes

1 • forget

- **forget + to + inf.** — ينسى أن يفعل ... (أي أن الحدث لم يتم)

  ex. I'm sorry, I forgot to call you.

- **forget + V-ing.** — ينسى أنه فعل ... (أي أن الحدث تم)

  ex. I forgot calling Ali, so I called him again.

2 • spend

- **spend + وقت + V-ing.** — يقضي وقتًا في ...

  ex. Marine biologists spend their time studying sea animals.

- **spend + money + on + n.** — ينفق مالًا على ...

  ex. The government should spend more money on education.

Reading



My dream job

This week, we interviewed Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist.

1. What's a marine biologist?

A marine biologist[1] is a person who studies the ocean[2] and the plants and animals in it.

2. Why did you decide to become a marine biologist?

I'm good at science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

3. What's your day like?

In my job, every day is different! On some days, I go diving around coral reefs[3]. On other days, I test water from the ocean in the laboratory*[4]. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results[5] of tests.

4. What's the best thing about your job?

My research[6] helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it?

5. And what's the worst thing?

There are bad things about every job, aren't there? Sometimes the weather[7] is terrible[8]. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm[9]!

Arabic Meaning

١- عالم أحياء بحرية
٢- محيط
٣- الشعاب المرجانية
٤- معمل
٥- نتائج
٦- بحث علمي
٧- الطقس
٨- فظيع
٩- عاصفة





Say it correctly

* laboratory

ينطق المقطع الأخير (tory) مثل كلمة (tree).

Tapescript

Arabic Meaning

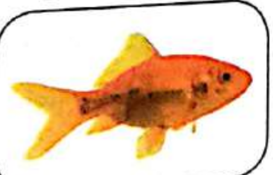
١- حيتان

Presenter : You visit some interesting places, don't you?

Nesma : Yes, I do! At the moment, I'm working in the Red Sea, near Neweiba. Last year, I worked in Australia. And before that, I worked in Thailand.

Presenter : Wow! And what different kinds of animals do you study?

Nesma : Well, some marine biologists study large animals, like whales[1] and dolphins. But I study fish and smaller animals around coral reefs.



Presenter : It sounds like a dream job to be a marine biologist, but it isn't an easy job, is it?



Nesma : No, it isn't. There's a lot of information to collect[2] and record[3]. It's hard work and it takes a long time. I work about ten hours a day.

Presenter : What is your advice to young people who want to become a marine biologist?

Nesma : Work hard at school, especially[4] in Science. You have to love science to be a marine biologist! And find out everything you can about the job. You can even volunteer[5] for dives.

Presenter : That sounds like great advice. Thank you, Nesma.

Nesma : You're welcome.

Exercises on Lesson 2

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I didn't like the film. I thought it was --------- . WB
   a good b terrible c interesting d funny
2. Mariam got the --------- of her test. She did very well! WB
   a jobs b sports c results d phones
3. A marine biologist --------- water from the ocean in the laboratory.
   a tastes b tests c answers d asks
4. A/An ---------, for example the Atlantic, is bigger than a sea. WB
   a river b lake c pond d ocean
5. I like this story. It's --------- .
   a boring b terrible c interesting d bad

Homework Exercises

1. I love learning about sea life. I want to be a --------- . WB
   a marine biologist b computer programmer
   c dentist d businessman
2. I'm good --------- maths and English.
   a for b to c at d on

3. The --------- of the match was amazing. Our team won 5-0.

a result b answer c test d storm

4. I went --------- in the Red Sea and I saw coral reefs.

a diving b climbing c driving d singing

5. I --------- well in my exams and got high marks.

a made b took c did d gave

6. The scientist did lots of tests in the --------- . WB

a laboratory b zoo c park d bank

7. The marine biologist's --------- helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean.

a ocean b research c whale d meeting

8. I couldn't go out yesterday. The weather was --------- .

a fine b nice c terrible d good

9. The tourists enjoyed watching the coral --------- in the Red Sea.

a roofs b reefs c surfaces d results

10. **A:** What is the --------- like today?

B: It's quite hot.

a climate b weather c sky d moon



Question tags السؤال المذيل

- يستخدم السؤال المذيل للتأكد من معلومة ما أو للسؤال عن معلومة ما ويعنى (أليس كذلك؟).
- يأتى السؤال المذيل آخر الجملة ويتكون كالآتى:

?ضمير يعبر عن الفاعل + فعل مساعد أو ناقص ,.....

- إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفى والعكس صحيح.

a positive statement جملة مثبتة + a negative question tag سؤال مذيل منفي

You are a student, aren't you?

يأتي ضمير الفاعل بعد الفعل المساعد

a negative statement جملة منفية + a positive question tag سؤال مذيل مثبت

Mary isn't a teacher, is she?

إذا كان الفاعل اسم يحول إلى ضمير فاعل

ex. Omar can sing a song, can't he?

• تحديد الفعل المستخدم مع الضمير فى السؤال المذيل يتبع الآتي:

- إذا كان بالجملة فعل مساعد / ناقص نستخدمه بعد تحويله من المثبت للمنفى والعكس:

am / is / are / was / were / can / could / will / would / should / may / might / must

ex. It's really important to look after our plant, isn't it?

ex. Osman can speak English, can't he?

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة أحد الأفعال المساعدة / الناقصة السابقة نستخدم **don't / doesn't / didn't** إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة:

, don't ....?	... مضارع بسيط بدون s
, doesn't .... ?	... مضارع بسيط+ s / es / ies
, didn't .... ?	... ماضي بسيط

ex. Ali plays well , doesn't he?

• أما إذا كانت الجملة منفية بـ **don't / doesn't / didn't** نستخدم صيغ الإثبات **do / does / did**:

ex. I don't play well, do I?

لاحظ الآتى:

١- تحول (I'm) فى السؤال المذيل إلى (aren't I) بينما (am not) تحول إلى (am I):

ex. I'm going to win the match, aren't I?

ex. I'm not able to answer the test, am I?

٢- إذا جاءت scarcely / seldom / hardly / few / little / never فى الجملة تكون الجملة منفية ويكون السؤال المذيل مثبت.

ex. Samir never travels to England, does he?

٣- لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

not = n't / will not = won't / cannot = can't

ex. Sameh won't come, will he?
ex. Ola can't speak Chinese, can she?

٤- لاحظ أن الاختصار ('s) هو اختصار للفعل (is):

(is + v-ing)

ex. He's eating now, isn't he?

٥- تذكر أن كلمة (there) تظل كما هي في السؤال المذيل:

ex. There is a big fish here, isn't there?

٦- عندما تستخدم الأفعال (did - does - do) و (had - has - have) كأفعال أساسية يكون السؤال المذيل كالتالى:

ex. They have breakfast early, don't they?
- Ali has a nice car, doesn't he?
- Omar had a walk yesterday, didn't he?
- She does her homework every day, doesn't she?
- Amal did the shopping yesterday, didn't she?

Exercises on Lesson 2



Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: WB

1- He's fast, ---------- he?
a is b aren't c was d isn't

2- Ahmed doesn't play football, ---------- ?
a don't they b doesn't he c does he d he does

3- You live in Cairo, ---------- ?
a are you b don't you c didn't you d do you

SB

4- He needs rest, ---------- he?
a isn't b aren't c doesn't d don't

5- I'm good at English, ---------- I?
a am b are c aren't d isn't

Unit 12

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

WB

1. They **aren't** tall trees, aren't they? (..........)
2. Our teachers are very helpful, **don't** they? (..........)
3. You don't like coffee, **are** you? (..........)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- You .... like sweets, do you?
a didn't b doesn't c do d don't

2- It is hot today, ... it?
a is b will c isn't d aren't

3- Too many sweets aren't healthy for you, ... they?
a aren't b are c isn't d weren't

4- She practises the piano every day, ... she?
a isn't b didn't c doesn't d wasn't

5- Ali can't speak English, ...?
a can he b he can c he can't d can't he

6- That bag is too heavy to lift, ...?
a does it b wasn't it c is it d isn't it

7- Ashraf doesn't play football, ...?
a doesn't he b he doesn't c does he d he does

8- They are nice girls, ...?
a they are b are they c they aren't d aren't they

9- Smoking can make you ill, ...?
a it can't b it can c can't it d can it

10- Hossam has a good car, ...?
a hasn't he b doesn't he c don't he d isn't he

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The weather **wasn't** fine, is it? (..........)
2. Your brother can't play the guitar, can **she**? SB (..........)
3. Salwa sleeps early, **didn't** she? (..........)

3 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your dream job"

....

....

....

"Key Vocabulary"

education	تعليم	Kenya	دولة كينيا
university	جامعة	Ghana	دولة غانا
apartment	شقة	culture	ثقافة
skills	مهارات	colourful	زاهي الألوان
workshop	ورشة	basket	سلة
jewellery	مجوهرات	pottery	الفخار
adult	شخص بالغ / راشد	earn (ed)	يكسب

Vocabulary

country	دولة	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
exam	امتحان	team	فريق
angry	غاضب	Kenyan	كينيّ الجنسية
player	لاعب	ring	خاتم
present	هدية	necklace	عقد
tradition	تقليد/عُرف	ability	قدرة
traditional	تقليدى	art	رسم
modern	حديث	belief	اعتقاد
market	سوق	travel (led)	يسافر
enough	كافي	change (d)	يتغير
clay	صلصال	hope (d)	يأمل
flying	الطيران	practise (d)	يمارس
local business	عمل تجاري محلي	pass (ed)	ينجح

Words & Meanings

Word	Arabic	Meaning
earn	يكسب	get money by working
jewellery	مجوهرات	things such as necklaces(1) and rings(2) that you wear
adult	شخص بالغ	a fully grown person
workshop	ورشة	a room or small building where people make or repair things
skill	مهارة	the ability(3) to do something well
culture	ثقافة	the art(4), ideas, beliefs(5), etc. of a group of people
pottery	فخار	pots, dishes, etc. made from clay(6)
apartment	شقة	a home that is a number of rooms in a building
get married	يتزوج	become husband(7) and wife
university	جامعة	a place where you study after you leave school, for a degree(8)
basket	سلة	something you can use to carry or hold things
colourful	زاهي للألوان	with many different colours(9)

Arabic Meanings

Expressions

Expression	Arabic
buy an apartment	يشترى شقة
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة
get married	يتزوج
go to university	يذهب للجامعة
have children	لديه أطفال
pass exams	يجتاز امتحانات
work **hard**	يعمل بجد
do a job	يؤدي وظيفة

Prepositions

Preposition	Arabic
live **in**	يعيش فى
go **to**	يذهب إلى
move **to**	ينتقل إلى (يعزّل)
take ... **from**	يأخذ ... من
stay **for**	يقيم لمدة
a plan **for**	خطة لـ
around the world	حول العالم

Word Differences

hard	جاد/بجد	hardly	بصعوبة/تقريبًا لا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Present		Past simple
know	يعرف	knew	have	يملك	had



1 • other • others • another

• other — آخر (يأتي بعدها اسم جمع بعد)

ex. Do you meet other boys at school?

• others — الآخرون (لا يأتي بعدها اسم)

ex. Some tourists like to visit Luxor. Others like Sharm El-Sheikh.

• another — آخر (يأتي بعدها اسم مفرد)

ex. Mum gave me another apple.

2 • see

• see + مفعول + v + ing — يرى «وصف رؤية الحدث أثناء حدوثه»

ex. I saw a man carrying many bags.

• see + مفعول + inf. (to مصدر بدون) — يرى «وصف رؤية الحدث ككل»

ex. I saw Habiba leave a few minutes ago.

Reading



I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education[1] is very important[2]. I hope that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my best subject[3].

I don't like flying[4], so I don't want to travel around the world. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have? I don't know!

Arabic Meaning

١- تعليم
٢- هام
٣- مادة
٤- الطيران

Unit 12



Arabic

Presenter : Rami, what do you want to do when you're older?

Rami : I really want to be an architect. I must go to university[1] for that so I need to work hard. I won't pass[2] my exams[3] if I don't work hard! When I finish university, I want to travel. I'd like to get a job in another country, like South Africa. But after a few years I'll come back to Egypt. I'd like to get married[4] one day, but I don't want to live in Cairo. I prefer[5] the countryside!

Presenter : Amira, what about you?

Amira : I want to go to university, so I hope I'll pass my exams! If I g university, I'll study Science. I'd love to be a scientist! It's a re interesting job. I'd like to get a job in Cairo and buy an apartm want to learn to drive so that I can visit my family. One day, I' get married and have children, but not for a long time for that!

Reading



Traditional jobs in Africa

Today, many people in Africa work in modern offices, but traditional[1] jobs and skills[2] are still important.

1. Ⓑ

People started making pottery[3] thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops[4] or their own homes. If you go to a village in Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults[5] can learn this skill.

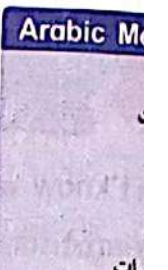
2. Ⓓ

It is traditional to make jewellery[6] in Kenya. You can see the colourful[7] jewellery in markets all over the country. Today, some local businesses[8] also use social media[9] and the internet to sell jew to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it continues a tradition[10] and it helps local people to earn[11] money.

3. Ⓐ

It is an important part of Africa's culture[12] to make baskets. It is also a wo women from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana, there are a l women who make and sell baskets. You can buy colourful baskets from Gha countries all over the world.

Arabic M





Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists learn a lot about ancient Egyptian .... when they visit Egypt. WB
   a) leisure b) culture c) mixture d) picture
2. Sara got .... to a doctor. She is a good wife.
   a) tired b) angry c) married d) passed
3. You should study your lessons well. .... is very important.
   a) Education b) Tradition c) Diving d) Travelling
4. To .... is to get money by working. WB
   a) win b) earn c) buy d) lose
5. A .... is an ability to do something well. WB
   a) skeleton b) skill c) skirt d) sky

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I hope that I .... my exams so that I can go to university.
   a) move b) forget c) pass d) protect
2. Maths is my best .... I think it is so easy.
   a) colour b) subject c) object d) hobby
3. My uncle finally got a/an .... in a big company.
   a) apartment b) job c) ocean d) weather
4. A .... is a room or small building where people make or repair things. WB
   a) shop b) market c) workshop d) school
5. A/An .... is a fully grown person. WB
   a) child b) adult c) baby d) kid
6. The art, ideas, beliefs, etc. of a group of people is their .... WB
   a) class b) picture c) culture d) pottery
7. You need a lot of .... to make a beautiful basket. WB
   a) skirts b) skeletons c) skills d) squares
8. The shop had a lot of cups, plates and other .... WB
   a) tradition b) education c) culture d) pottery
9. A doctor can usually .... a lot of money. WB
   a) win b) buy c) earn d) do



The first conditional
الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية (إذا / لو If)

Form / التكوين

• نستخدم (إذا / لو **If**) فى الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية بالصيغة الآتية:

If + present simple, → فاعل + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + inf.

• يمكن أن تأتى **if** فى وسط الجملة:

فاعل + will('ll) / will not (won't) + inf. → if + present simple

ex. If Mona is quick, she will catch the bus.
= Mona will catch the bus if she is quick.

ex. If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.
= They won't go to the beach if it is windy tomorrow.

لاحظ الآتى:

• إذا بدأت الجملة الشرطية بـ (if) فإننا نضيف فاصلة (,) قبل كتابة الجملة الثانية، بينما لا نضيف الفاصلة إذا جاءت (if) فى وسط الجملة.

Usage / الاستخدام

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتعبير عن حدث محتمل حدوثه فى المستقبل

ex. If Ali studies hard, he will pass the test.

Question / السؤال

• فى حالة السؤال عن الحالة الأولى للجمل الشرطية نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

If + present simple, → will + فاعل + inf....?

Will + فاعل + inf.... → if + present simple...?

ex. If you have a lot of money, will you buy a car?

ex. Will you buy a car if you have a lot of money?

Yes, I will. No, I won't.

Exercises on Lessons ③ & ④



Check Up Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

WB
1- If you play tennis all day, you will ------ tired.
a are b is c be d not

WB
2- The teacher will not be happy if you ------ your homework.
a didn't do b doing c don't do d did

SB
3. If the tourists go to Giza, they ------ the Pyramids.
a will see b seeing c saw d didn't see

SB
4. If you ------ to that restaurant, you'll have a really good lunch.
a went b goes c go d going

5- If you play well, you ------ the match.
a wins b will win c won d are won

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- If you phone me tonight, we will <u>to talk</u> about school. (------------)
2- If you <u>ran</u>, you will catch the bus. (------------)
3- If we move to Cairo, my father <u>would</u> get a new job. WB (------------)

Homework Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB
1- If they don't buy tickets, they ------ see the tennis match.
a won't b would c not will d aren't

WB
2- If you ------, you will not understand the lesson.
a listened b don't listen c listens d listening

3- What ------ if you go to Paris?
a you'll see b you see c will you see d sees

4- If Mr Tarek ------ ill, Mr Ahmed will teach the lesson.
a was b wasn't c is d doesn't

WB
5- If you want to see the doctor, you ------ to wait.
a will have b have will c will d won't

6. I will help you with your homework ...... you find it difficult.

a although b if c and d so

7. If I visit my grandparents, I .... them a present.

a took b will take c would take d takes

8. Lara .... to drive if she stays in the city. She'll use the bus.

a learns b doesn't learn c won't learn d learnt

9. If I .... to university, I'll study to be an engineer.

a go b will go c went d goes

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- If I finish my homework before seven o'clock, I will **came** and visit you. WB (..........)

2- If it **was** very hot tomorrow, I will stay inside. (..........)

3. Hala will go to work if she **felt** well tomorrow. (..........)

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 61-62 WB pages 111-112

"Key Vocabulary"

app	تطبيق	spend (spent)	يقضي (وقت) /ينفق (مال)
predictions	تنبؤات	cure (d)	علاج/يعالج
illness	مرض	disappear (ed)	يختفي
the countryside	الريف	design (ed)	يصمم
exciting	مثير		

Vocabulary

guitar	جيتار	project	مشروع
language	لغة	spelling	هجاء
electric	كهربي (يعمل بالكهرباء)	health	الصحة
robot	إنسان آلي	injury	إصابة
conclusion	خاتمة	introduction	مقدمة
hopeful	متفائل	introduce (d)	يقدم
map	خريطة	book (ed)	يحجز
completely	تمامًا		

Words & Meanings

Word	Meaning
app تطبيق	something on a phone that helps you use maps[1], book[2] tickets, etc.
cure يعالج	to make an injury or illness better
predictions تنبؤات	saying or writing what you think will happen[3] in the future
exciting مثير	not boring
design يصمم	to draw something that you plan to build or make
the countryside الريف	the area that is outside a town or a city

Arabic Meaning
١- خرائط
٢- يحجز
٣- يحدث

Unit 12

Expressions

learn to drive	يتعلم القيادة
design a video game	يصمم لعبة فيديو
design an app	يصمم تطبيق
in 10 years' time	في خلال ١٠ سنوات
stay the same	يظل كما هو
spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
introduce a new idea	يقدم فكرة جديدة
find a cure	يجد علاج

Prepositi

revise for
predictions for
cure for

Word Differences

cure علاج	care

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple
feel	يشعر	felt
keep	يحافظ على	kept

Present	
find	يجد
begin	يبدأ



Language Notes

• make

- **make + object** مفعول **+ inf. +** مصدر الفعل

  ex. Exercises make the heart beat faster.

- **make + object** مفعول **+ adjective** صفة

  ex. I think technology will make our life easier.



Tapescript

Arabi

Presenter : What are your plans(1) for the future, Hussein?

Hussein : I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar. And before I leave school, I want to design a video game!

Presenter : Wow! And what about later on? What will your life(2)

٣- لغة

Hussein : In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a doctor. I'd like to live in the city.

Presenter : Thank you, Hussein.

Presenter : Khadeeja, what are your plans for the future?

Khadeeja : Well, one day I'd like to be a teacher. But there are lots of other things I want to do first.

Presenter : Tell me about them.

Khadeeja : Well, before I get a job, I'd like to learn a new language[3]. I also want to learn to drive.

Presenter : And what will your life be like in 15 years' time?

Khadeeja : That's a long way into the future, isn't it? Well, in 15 years' time, I'll have a job in a school. I think I'll get married, too.

Presenter : Thanks, Khadeeja.

Reading



My predictions[1] for the future

By Ahmed

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives. Technology[2] will make our lives easier and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have apps[3] for everything.

Scientists will find new cures[4] for illnesses[5] so people will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear[6] completely.

All our cars will be electric[7]. If this happens, it will be much better for the air in our cities, won't it? I don't think I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

There will be a lot of interesting new jobs for people. Robots[8] will do some of the jobs that people do today. But I don't think we will have robot doctors or teachers!

I think there will be a lot of exciting changes[9] in the future, but some things will stay the same. Children will still go to school, learn new things and spend time with friends.

Arabic Meaning

١- تنبؤات
٢- التكنولوجيا
٣- تطبيقات
٤- علاجات
٥- أمراض
٦- يختفي
٧- كهربي
٨- روبوتات
٩- تغيرات



Dina:

I want to be a doctor but I need a lot of skills to do that. Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my uncle. He's a doctor so he can give some advice[1]. Next summer, I'm going to study English in England. You need to speak good English to be a doctor.

Before I leave school, I'm going to do voluntary work[2] at a children's hospital. In a few years' time, I want to go to a good university[3]. Then, in about ten years' time, I think I'll be a doctor in a good hospital!

Arabic Meaning

١- نصيحة
٢- عمل تطوعي
٣- جامعة

Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

Check Up Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That novel is really .... Everyone likes it.
   a exciting b terrible c boring d bad
2. Our company works to design a new .... that will help people to book cinema tickets.
   a app b tool c plane d radio
3. I like to live in a quite place, so I like to live in the ....
   a city b countryside c office d garden
4. If you ...., people can't see or find you. WB
   a kill b dislike c disappear d disagree
5. To .... means to make an injury or illness better. WB
   a break b hurt c damage d cure

Homework Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I will learn to .... because I want to buy a car.
   a dive b sleep c ride d drive
2. I think technology will .... our lives easier.
   a cause b make c find d cure
3. It's better to use .... cars to keep the environment clean.
   a big b electric c musical d clean
4. "........." means "not boring". WB
   a Exciting b Terrible c Worse d Long

5. I will start to .... for next month's exam tomorrow.
   a revise b advise c realise d finish
6. Could you tell us about your .... for the match?
   a reasons b predictions c ends d grounds
7. Scientists found a new .... for a dangerous disease.
   a cure b doctor c clinic d hospital
8. I think some illnesses will .... completely in the future.
   a kill b cure c disappear d find

Language Functions

Talking about your future plans

الحديث عن خططك المستقبلية

• يمكن الحديث عن خططك المستقبلية باستخدام الآتي:

I'm going to + inf.

I want to + inf.

I'd like to + inf.

• ويمكن استخدام تعبيرات تعبر عن المستقبل مثل:

tomorrow / in ... years' time / Next ...

ex. Next year, I'd like to live in the country.

ex. In ten months' time, I'd like to design an app.

Exercises on Language Functions

Complete the following dialogue:

Nabil : What are your plans for the future, Kamal?

Kamal : Really, I want to design an ① ....

Nabil : Why?

Kamal : To help people use maps and ② .... holidays.

Nabil : Wow! And what about later on? What will your life be like in five years' time?

Kamal : In five years' time, I want to have a good ③ ....

Nabil : What job would you like to do?

Kamal : I'd like to be a computer ④ ....

Nabil : Why?

Kamal : To ⑤ .... video games.



Writing Skills

فقرات إنشائية عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة:

1 My dream job

I'd like to be a marine biologist one day! A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it. I'd like to be a marine biologist because I'm good at science and I love the ocean. I think all animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting. I'd like to be a marine biologist to go diving around coral reefs. I can test water from the ocean in the laboratory. I think my research will help to protect the plants and animals in the ocean.

2 Your plans for the future

I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar. And before I leave school, I want to design a video game! In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a doctor. I really need to help find cures for dangerous diseases. I'd like to live in the countryside. I think life in the countryside is much better than the city's life. It is also quieter.

3 Life in future

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives. Technology will make our lives easier and more interesting. I think our phones will be more important and we will have apps for everything. Scientists will find new cures for illnesses so people will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear completely. All our cars will be electric. If this happens, it will be much better for the air in our cities. I don't think people will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

Excel Yourself

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b c or d:

1. Let's visit our aunt tomorrow, ...?
   a isn't it　b shall we　c aren't we　d don't we
2. The next exam is .... important for all of you.
   a special　b especially　c local　d locally
3. I'm a good teacher, ...?
   a don't I　b aren't I　c amn't I　d won't I

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ahmed had car last year, **wasn't** he? (.............)
2. He never likes fish, **doesn't** he? (.............)
3. Osama read the lesson, **doesn't** he? (.............)

General Exercises On Unit 12

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Karim : What does your father do?

Ali : He is an ① ....

Karim : What does an engineer do?

Ali : He designs ② .... and engines.

Karim : What'd you like to be in the future?

Ali : I'd like to be a writer.

Karim : ③ .... you like reading and writing?

Ali : ④ ...., I read and write a lot.

Karim : Best wishes.

Ali : Thank ⑤ ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was an important .... and our manager made a lot of decisions.
   a) interview b) meeting c) party d) concert
2. Habiba is a nurse. She looks .... sick people.
   a) for b) up c) after d) on — SB
3. You want to be a nurse, ... you?
   a) didn't b) isn't c) doesn't d) don't — SB
4. It .... hot today, is it?
   a) doesn't b) don't c) isn't d) wasn't — SB
5. You won't forget to phone me, ... you?
   a) will b) should c) do d) are — SB
6. There were a lot of people at the meeting, weren't .... ?
   a) these b) there c) those d) it — SB
7. You .... like fish, do you?
   a) didn't b) don't c) aren't d) won't — WB
8. Sara wants to be a marine biologist, ... she?
   a) isn't b) won't c) doesn't d) aren't — WB
9. Your grandmother .... like fish, does she?
   a) does b) isn't c) don't d) doesn't

10- .... is pots, dishes, etc. made from clay.

a Battery b Bakery c Jewellery d Pottery WB

11- If Dad .... a new job, we'll move to Cairo.

a got b get c will get d gets SB

12- You can see people making baskets in the .... down the road.

a library b restaurant c workshop d school WB

13- My cousin is a/an .... now. She was 18 last week!

a baby b child c kid d adult WB

14- My father bought this .... for my mother when they got married.

a jewellery b train c keyboard d clay

15- When my dad knew that my sister failed, he was so ....

a hungry b angry c pleased d cheerful

3 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You like playing tennis, **isn't** you? (............)
2. You **should** eat too many cakes, should you? WB (............)
3. Laila can't cook, **can't** she? (............)
4. It is cold in England in winter, **doesn't** it? WB (............)
5. You did your homework last night, **did** you? WB (............)
6. Nasser will write to me when he gets there, **will** he? WB (............)
7. There **were** many people at the match, were there? WB (............)
8. She **speaks** French, does she? WB (............)
9. If I **went** to university, I'll study maths. (............)
10. If I **got** a good job, I'll buy a car. (............)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان)

"Your plans for the future" WB

....

....

....

....

....

....





TEST 7 UNIT 12

A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى أخر الكتاب

1. The speaker would like to be a/an ....

   a accountant   b nurse   c teacher   d student

2. The speaker would like to learn a new ....

   a idea   b language   c hobby   d program

3. The speaker wants to learn to ....

   a dive   b drive   c run   d jump

4. In 15 years' time, the speaker will get ....

   a ill   b married   c angry   d home

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya : You visit some interesting places, don't you?

Marine biologist : ① ...., I do. I'm working in the Red Sea these days.

Aya : Wow! What sea animals do you study?

Marine biologist : I study large sea animals like ② ....

Aya : Working as a marine biologist isn't easy, ③ .... it?

Marine biologist : No, it isn't. I work a lot to collect and record information.

Aya : How ④ .... do you work a day?

Marine biologist : I work about nine hours a day.

Aya : What's your advice to young people who want to become a marine biologist?

Marine b... : ...k hard at school, especially in science.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Nemo is a clownfish. It lives in the ocean. Nemo's mother doesn't live with because a shark ate it! So, Nemo and his father, Marlin, live alone in a beautiful co reef. On its first day of school, Nemo was very happy to see the sea world, but h father is very worried. Marlin is afraid of sharks, and he doesn't want to leave Nem alone. However, Nemo disobeys his father and goes after a boat, and unfortunately, a man catches it! So, Nemo's father starts a journey to find its son. Nemo stays in a aquarium in Australia, where it meets new friends, but it misses its father. Nemo trie to escape from the aquarium, but it's very difficult!

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Why doesn't Nemo's mother live with Nemo?

2- Where do Nemo and its father live?

3- Why do you think the man catches Nemo?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Nemo stays in a/an ---------.

a aquarium b planetarium c theatre d ocean

5- Nemo feels --------- and tries to escape.

a happy b glad c cheerful d sad

6- Marlin is Nemo's ---------.

a shark b man c father d mother

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That good man -------- to help the old woman cross the road.

a flew b volunteered c refused d disagreed

2. An architect is a person --------- designs buildings.

a what b which c when d who

3. He will get high marks if he --------- harder.

a studied b studies c will study d studying

WB

4. You will visit your aunt today, ---------?
   a will you b won't you c can you d aren't you
5. A/An --------- is a place where you study after you leave school for a degree.
   a office b park c garage d university
6. Carpenters and mechanics usually work in --------- . SB
   a workshops b markets c baskets d engines
7. --------- is often made of silver or gold. SB
   a Bread b Jewellery c Sand d Pottery
8. My family and I went to the nearby park where we --------- a nice time.
   a spent b designed c cured d left
9. I think English is the most important --------- around the world.
   a screen b language c map d project
10. I'm --------- that Sara will get high marks in her exams.
   a careful b helpful c joyful d hopeful

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Hassan isn't watching TV, **was** he? (-------------)
2. Mr Ali is the man **which** we all like. (-------------)
3. If you visit the museum, you **would** meet a lot of tourists. (-------------)
4. You are twelve years old, **are** you? (-------------)

E Writing

(مجاب عنه قبل الامتحان)

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Life in the future"

Review D Units 10, 11 & 12

SB pages 64-65 WB pages 1

"Key Vocabulary"

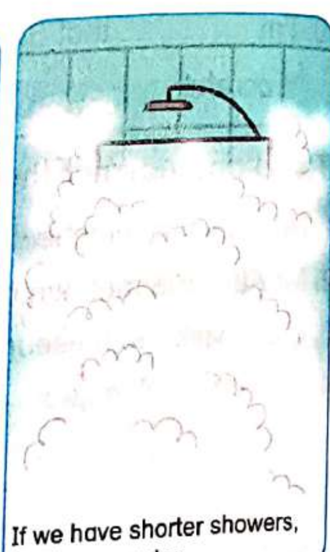
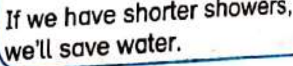
sad	حزين	shower	حمام
pick up	يلتقط	can	صفيح
technology	التكنولوجيا	souvenir	تذكارية
charity	جمعية خيرية	aeronautical engineer	س طيران
soft	ناعم / أملس		

Reading






If we pick up the rubbish from the beach, the animals won't eat it.



If we have shorter showers, we'll save water.







Reading



In the past, many people had traditional[1] jobs that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, aren't they? For example, an aeronautical engineer[2] is a person who designs things that fly. If you want to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very interesting. If you want to help future technology[3], perhaps you will design drones. Many people think that drones will carry our post in the future. That will make the skies above our cities interesting, won't it?

Arabic Meaning

١- تقليدي
٢- مهندس طيران
٣- التكنولوجيا



Tapescript



Malak : Here are the boxes for the recycling project. Different rubbish goes into different boxes.

Hala : Great! So which box does this bottle go into?

Malak : What is it made of -plastic or glass?

Hala : It's made of plastic.

Malak : OK, it goes into the yellow box.

Hala : Right ... There's another bottle here. This one is made of glass.

Malak : If it's made of glass, it goes into the blue box.

Hala : What about this magazine? It's made of paper.

Malak : It goes into the red box.

Hala : Where can I put this can?

Malak : If it's made of metal, it goes into the green box.

Hala : Yes, it's made of metal... I'm putting it in the green box.

Malak : What's left?

Hala : Just this T-shirt. We can't recycle that, can we? It's made of cotton.

Malak : We're not going to recycle the clothes - but we can give them to other people so that they can use them. Put them in the orange box, please.

Hala : The orange box ... OK.

Malak : Great. Everything is ready. Thanks for your help, Hala.



Arabic Meaning
١- هدية تذكارية
٢- ناعم/أملس
٣- جمعية خيرية

1- Guessing something

Boy : I'm not sure what this souvenir[1] made of. Is it plastic or stone?

2- Giving instructions in order

Man : OK, first look for the fruit that is yellow. Then feel the fruit carefully. It should not be too soft[2]. So, if it's yellow and not too soft, what should you do? Well, finally, take it carefully from the tree.

3- Checking information

Woman: Hello, so, it's Mrs Shabana, isn't it? And you have got two children in this class, haven't you? But Aya isn't in school today, is she?

4- Talking about future plans

Girl : Before I go to university, I think I'll travel for a few months. Then I'd like to work for a charity[3].

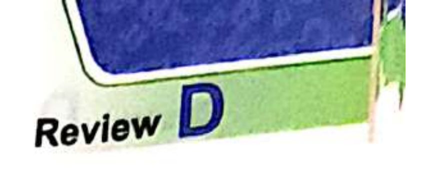




1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

1. Ras Mohammed is a/an ....
   a) charity b) nature reserve c) forest d) ocean
2. Many people go .... there.
   a) shopping b) walking c) kayaking d) diving
3. Ras Mohammed reserve is famous for its beautiful coral ....
   a) roofs b) reefs c) leaves d) knives
4. People mustn't give .... to any fish.
   a) money b) water c) reefs d) food



B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya : Did you watch yesterday programme on TV, Nada?
Nada : No, what was it about?
Aya : It was about the dangers to our ① .... Earth.
Nada : So. How can we solve this ② ....?
Aya : They said we should ③ .... rubbish.
Nada : What else did they say?
Aya : They said we should have shorter ④ .... to save water.
Nada : It's useful information.
Aya : ⑤ ...., It's very useful.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following and answer the questions:

Trash isn't just a problem in parks and streets. It's also a problem on many beaches. Seas around the world are filling up with trash. It gets into the seas when people throw litter. Some boats and ships sailors throw their trash directly into the water. Trash is also thrown into rivers. The biggest problem about seas trash is that most of it is plastic. The plastic products can stay for a long time until they are about the size of a city. This can be harmful to birds and other animals that live on the shore. Also, trash can carry germs that make people sick. We should teach people about the effects of seas trash. People can do voluntary work to clean up beaches and rivers.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How can plastic be bad for people?

....

2. What is the biggest problem about seas trash?

....

3. How do you think people can do to clean up seas?

....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Trash is the biggest .... around the world.

a) rivers b) problem c) beaches d) seas

5- Plastic can .... for a long time.

a) stay b) work c) clean d) throw

6- Trash can be .... to birds and other animals that live on the shore.

a) good b) clean c) harmful d) nice

D Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- You shouldn't have long hot ---------. SB

a shares b showers c charities d changes

2- Animals in the nature --------- must find food for themselves. WB

a reserve b serve c souvenir d engineer

3- If I study hard, I always --------- good test results. WB

a gets b got c get d getting

4- An octopus can swim fast, ---------?

a can't it b will it c can it d does it

5- There --------- doctors and dentists in ancient Egypt.

a are b were c will be d have

6- I'm very ---------. I think I will go to bed. WB

a fine b healthy c interesting d tired

7- Don't put that bottle in the bin, you can --------- it.

a recycle b cycle c circle d ride

8- The desert is a difficult --------- for animals to live in.

a population b environment c government d station

9- A dentist is a person which checks people's ---------.

a hands b cars c heads d teeth

10- --------- are made of cotton or wool.

a Windows b Cushions c Gates d roofs

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. If I **didn't** follow the students, they make mistakes. (---------)
2. That's the woman **which** found my wallet. (---------)
3. You **mustn't** be careful when you hold a hot pan. (---------)
4. You don't like wearing gloves, **don't** you? (---------)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on: SB

"A character you liked in a story"

Bit by Bit

New Hello!

Key
to Exercises
First Year Preparatory

إجابات كتاب الشرح

الفصل الدراسى الثانى





التوزيع :

١٠ شارع كامل صدقى - الفجالة القاهرة

ت : ٢٥٩١٩١٦٥

للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والإقتراحات

الإدارة : تليفون : ٢٥٨٨٠١٠٢

Second Term



Lessons 1&2

Vocabulary p. 14 / 15

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. stadium
2. d. funfair
3. b. museum
4. d. nervous
5. b. shopping

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. aquarium
2. d. wheel
3. a. Dolphins
4. b. football stadium
5. c. bowling alley
6. d. sports centre
7. c. planetarium
8. a. canteen
9. d. exhibition
10. d. stars
11. b. have
12. c. beach
13. b. restaurant



Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. a. last
2. b. Yesterday
3. d. ago
4. a. yesterday
5. b. went
6. c. Yesterday

2. Read and correct

1. am / was
2. Tomorrow / Yesterday
3. move / moved

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. last	2. a. last
3. b. did	4. c. yesterday
5. a. last	6. d. bought
7. a. ago	8. b. last
9. c. had	10. a. Were

2. Read and correct

1. have / had
2. age / ago
3. driving / drove
4. ride / rode

Lessons 3 & 4



Check up exercises

Choose the correct answer

1. c. sailor	2. d. alone
3. b. sank	4. d. terrible
5. a. coconuts	

Homework exercises

Choose the correct answer

1. c. nearby	2. c. alone
3. a. jungle	4. b. coconuts
5. c. terrible	6. d. sailor
7. a. on	8. d. sink
9. b. caves	10. b. musician

Grammar p. 24/ 25

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. a. is	2. a. did
3. b. come	4. c. am
5. d. can	6. c. Do
7. b. did	

2. Read and correct

1. is / was
2. have / had
3. Can / Could

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. went 2. d. haven't
3. d. Have 4. c. has
5. b. Can 6. b. What
7. b. Do 8. a. Will

2. Read and correct

1. do / does
2. Do / Are
3. What / How

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary p. 29 / 30

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. d. barbecue
2. a. concert
3. c. windy
4. a. remember
5. d. loud

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. closed 2. d. barbecues
3. b. Then 4. d. concert
5. c. drove 6. a. ticket
7. b. hotels 8. d. tired
9. a. on 10. a. with

Language Functions p. 30

- Complete the following dialogue

1. nice 2. did
3. When
4. because / as
5. Although

Excel yourself p. 31

1- Choose the correct answer

1. b. really
2. b. make
3. a. all
4. b. had
5. b. will

2. Read and correct

1. tired / tiring
2. to work / working

General Exercises p. 32 - 33

1. Complete the following dialogue

1. match 2. Who
3. Was 4. win
5. funfair

2 Choose the correct

1. b. museum 2. c. travelled
3. d. didn't come 4. b. aquarium
5. d. haircut 6. b. went
7. b. for 8. a. can
9. b. Does 10. d. writer
11. a. because
12. c. because
13. b. Although
14. d. Although
15. c. Although

3. Read and correct

1. tomorrow / yesterday
2. are / were
3. watch / watched
4. am / was
5. Are / Do
6. Has / Have

Test 1 on Unit 7 p. 34 / 36

2. Complete the following dialogue

1. do 2. did
3. got 4. Can
5. you

4. Choose the correct

1. c. coconut 2. b. How
3. b. sinks 4. c. traditional
5. a. Have 6. d. sailor
7. b. ago 8. a. Rock
9. d. planetarium 10. d. Last

5. Read and correct

1. did / do
2. go / went

3. Did / Can
4. tomorrow / yesterday



Unit 8

Lesson 1

Vocabulary p. 41 / 42

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. Bridge
2. a. Tower
3. b. Pyramid
4. a. country
5. c. Tunnel

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. city
2. b. tower
3. d. amazing
4. d. world
5. b. deep
6. b. tunnel
7. c. bridge
8. a. How
9. d. banks

Language Functions p. 43

- Complete the following dialogue

1. What
2. Pyramids
3. second
4. temple
5. old

Lessons 2 & 3

Vocabulary p. 48

Check up exercises

Choose the correct answer

1. b. cheap
2. b. achievements
3. c. ugly
4. d. sunset
5. a. beautiful

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. suspension
2. b. expensive
3. a. skating
4. d. Insects
5. d. proud
6. d. dangerous
7. b. climbing
8. b. view
9. c. bee
10. a. Sunset

Lessons 2 & 3

Grammar p. 50 / 51

Check up exercises

Choose the correct answer

1. d. higher
2. b. taller
3. a. noisier
4. b. bigger
5. d. than

2. Read and correct

1. most / more
2. big / bigger
3. most / the most
4. clever / the cleverest

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. nearer
2. d. the tallest
3. a. faster
4. c. better
5. b. more difficult
6. b. happier
7. c. the best
8. d. older
9. b. the biggest
10. a. taller

2. Read and correct

1. more high / higher
2. happy / happiest
3. longest / longer
4. badder / better

Lessons 4,5 & 6

Vocabulary p. 56

Check up exercises

Choose the correct answer

1. d. space
2. b. treasures
3. d. entrance
4. b. on
5. d. fountain

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. valuable
2. b. park
3. d. to
4. d. treasures
5. b. space
6. a. competition
7. c. columns
8. a. collection
9. a. Valley
10. c. public

Lessons 4,5 & 6

Grammar p. 58

Check up exercises

Choose the correct answer

1. a. because
2. b. but
3. a. because
4. d. but

2. Read and correct

1. because / but
2. and / but
3. and / because

Language Functions p. 59/60

3. Complete the following dialogue

1. opinion
2. Because
3. the most
4. way
5. with

Excel yourself p. 60

1. **Choose the correct answer**

1. b. for
2. a. fewer
3. a. best
4. d. for

2. Read and correct

1. Although / But
2. circle / square

General Exercises p. 61-62

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. What / Which
2. Temple
3. Egyptian
4. long
5. Thank

2. Choose the correct

1. a. wide
2. a. more expensive
3. c. crowded
4. b. more modern
5. a. most popular
6. d. worst
7. b. further
8. c. centre
9. b. quiet
10. c. protects
11. c. disagreed
12. c. at
13. a. like
14. b. about
15. a. same
16. d. further
17. b. empty

3. Read and correct

1. strong / stronger
2. most careful / more careful
3. the better / the best
4. far / further
5. at / on
6. road / way

Test 2 on unit 8 p. 64 / 66

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. Where
2. in
3. interesting
4. see
5. objects

4. Choose the correct answer

1. b. low
2. a. narrow
3. b. noisy
4. a. noisier
5. b. bridges
6. b. more crowded
7. a. quiet
8. b. nicer
9. c. Sunset
10. c. because

5. Read and correct

1. little / less
2. best / better
3. more / best
4. the more beautiful / the most beautiful



Unit 9

Lesson 1

Vocabulary p. 72

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. trekking
2. b. Mountain biking
3. c. kayaking
4. d. windsurfing 5. c. looks

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. climbing 2. a. diving
3. b. zip lining 4. a. sailing
5. d. try 6. c. trekking
7. a. journey 8. c. down
9. a. at 10. c. fun

Grammar p. 75/76

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. Is 2. a. will go
3. a. is going 4. d. going
5. a. not going to

2. Read and correct

1. gone / going
2. is going to / isn't going to
3. go / going

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. is going to 2. a. will buy
3. b. next 4. a. Are
5. a. is going to 6. c. do
7. c. are you

2. Read and correct

1. yesterday / tomorrow
2. is / are
3. is going to / isn't going to
4. Are / Is

Lessons 2 & 3

Vocabulary p. 81 / 82

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. sunny 2. c. clouds
3. a. weather 4. a. snow
5. b. Bedouin 6. b. third

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. wet 2. c. on
3. b. fog 4. d. protect
5. c. warm 6. b. foggy
7. a. guide 8. d. date
9. c. tent 10. c. took

Grammar p. 84 / 85

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. a. themselves
2. b. ourselves
3. c. myself
4. a. herself
5. a. herself

2. Read and correct

1. yourself / yourselves
2. itself / themselves
3. herself / himself

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. a. himself 2. c. myself
3. b. herself 4. b. yourself
5. a. ourselves 6. c. herself
7. b. themselves
8. a. themselves

2. Read and correct

1. myself / yourself
2. himself / herself
3. himself / yourself
4. herself / itself

Language Functions p.86

1. Complete the following dialogue

1. holiday
2. go
3. windy
4. think
5. sport / hobby

Lessons 4,5 & 6

Vocabulary p. 91

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. suggestion
2. c. form
3. c. to play
4. d. meeting
5. a. challenge

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. about
2. c. email
3. c. play
4. b. idea
5. b. advantages
6. a. famous
7. b. cousin
8. a. lines
9. b. the
10. d. made

Language Functions p. 92

1. Complete the following dialogue

1. go / try
2. dangerous
3. about
4. Let's
5. idea

Excel yourself p. 93

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. to
2. a. disadvantages

2. Read and correct

1. lonely / alone
2. happy / hobby

General Exercises p. 95-96

1. Complete the following dialogue

1. don't
2. rather
3. playing
4. play
5. idea

2. Choose the correct

1. a. is going to
2. c. Are
3. a. tent
4. a. yourself
5. a. windy
6. b. ourselves
7. a. wind
8. b. responded
9. a. Shall
10. c. join
11. a. home
12. b. by
13. c. quite
14. c. letters
15. a. shall

3. Read and correct

1. am going to / will
2. yourself / yourselves
3. is going to / isn't going to
4. himself / herself
5. sleeping / sleep
6. herself / himself

Test 3 on unit 9 p. 97 / 99

2. Complete the following dialogue

1. travelled
2. trekking
3. weather
4. yourselves
5. take

3. Choose the correct

1. b. journey
2. a. go
3. b. guide
4. c. hurt
5. b. himself
6. c. themselves
7. a. lining
8. d. adventure
9. c. across
10. a. going to

4. Read and correct

1. yourselves / ourselves
2. carried / carry
3. myself / yourself
4. herself / himself

Test 4 on Revision C 8 p. 103 / 105

2. Complete the following dialogue

1. idea
2. went
3. did
4. story
5. going

3. Choose the correct

1. b. took
2. c. because
3. b. competition
4. c. himself
5. a. canteen
6. d. scary
7. b. view
8. a. after
9. c. harbour
10. a. going to

4. Read and correct

1. largest / larger
2. gone / going
3. ourselves / myself
4. Do / Did

Unit 10

lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary p. 110 / 111

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. glass
2. c. oven
3. b. metal
4. a. roof
5. c. round

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. material
2. d. cushion
3. b. colour
4. a. wool
5. a. ancient
6. c. paint
7. a. stone
8. d. called
9. b. tap
10. a. curtains

Grammar p. 113 / 114

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. d. made
2. d. are
3. d. are
4. c. weren't any
5. b. weren't

2. Read and correct

1. some / any
2. isn't / aren't
3. making / made

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. of
2. a. weren't
3. b. is
4. d. aren't made
5. c. of
6. a. some
7. a. are made of
8. b. Are
9. a. is made
10. d. of

10. Read and correct

1. are / is
2. from / of
3. some / any
4. is / are

lessons 3

Vocabulary p. 118 / 119

Check up exercises

- Choose the correct answer

1. solar
2. robots
3. electricity
4. driverless
5. electric

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. produce
2. rockets
3. ordinary
4. drives
5. Robots
6. turbines
7. drone
8. for
9. architect
10. moon

Grammar p. 120

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. a. will go
2. b. will
3. a. won't
4. c. will
5. b. will use

2. Read and correct

1. having / have
2. last / next
3. Would / Will

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. Will
2. a. won't
3. c. won't go
4. c. tomorrow
5. a. will
6. c. will
7. a. will

2. Read and correct

1. win / will win
2. past / future
3. is / will
4. helping / help

lessons 4, 5 & 6

Vocabulary p. 126

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. Space
2. c. Warm
3. d. shape
4. a. earthquake
5. d. imagination

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. a. draw
2. a. space
3. c. keep
4. c. out
5. b. start
6. d. for
7. a. easier
8. c. warm
9. b. triangle

Excel yourself p. 127

1. Choose the correct answer

1. d. traditional
2. b. home
3. d. warm

2. Read and correct

1. want / won't
2. to / into

General Exercises p. 128-130

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. future
2. electric
3. agree
4. will
5. live

2. Choose the correct

1. d. is
2. d. Toys
3. c. weren't
4. a. glass
5. b. Is
6. a. will teach
7. d. finish
8. a. under
9. c. will
10. c. printers
11. c. roof
12. a. oven
13. b. panels
14. a. rectangular
15. c. space

3. Read and correct

1. is / are
2. was / wasn't
3. When / What
4. are / will
5. past / future
6. are / will

Test 5 on unit 10 p. 130 /132

2. Complete the following dialogue

1. made
2. is
3. leather
4. sure
5. Yes

4. Choose the correct

1. d. weren't
2. b. Robots
3. c. circular
4. a. designed
5. c. electric
6. b. be
7. d. leather
8. a. bricks
9. b. earthquake
10. c. made of

5. Read and correct

1. Are / Were
2. are / will
3. making / made
4. some / any



Lessons 1 & 2

Vocabulary p. 136/137

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. d. stingray
2. b. shell
3. c. poisonous
4. a. ocean
5. d. octopus

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. stings 2. d. flat
3. a. ocean 4. c. shark
5. b. from 6. c. in
7. b. coral reefs 8. c. shells
9. a. tail 10. d. protect

Grammar p. 139/140

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. stings 2. d. knows
3. b. If 4. c. when
5. a. don't get

2. Read and correct

1. where / when
2. didn't / don't
3. be / is
4. was / is

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. a. When 2. d. get
3. c. am 4. b. punishes
5. a. is 6. c. go
7. b. forget 8. d. feel
9. a. watches

2. Read and correct

1. was / am
2. answered / answer
3. What / When
4. travel / travels
5. couldn't / don't - can't

Lessons 2 & 3

Vocabulary p. 144/145

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. environment
2. d. recycle
3. c. planet
4. b. throw away
5. a. shares

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. get rid 2. c. plastic
3. a. die 4. b. environment
5. a. planets 6. d. rubbish
7. c. reserve 8. a. makes
9. b. with 10. a. turns
11. b. recycle

Grammar p. 147/148

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. a. must 2. d. mustn't
3. b. mustn't 4. c. mustn't
5. a. should

2. Read and correct

1. studying / study
2. to make / make

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. a. must 2. c. must
3. b. mustn't 4. d. mustn't
5. a. should

2. Read and correct

1. I should / should I
2. shouldn't / should
3. must / mustn't
4. should / shouldn't

Lessons 4,5 & 6

Vocabulary p. 153/154

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. ground
2. b. soil
3. a. hole
4. b. respect
5. d. seed

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. fishermen
2. b. respect
3. c. worried
4. a. weak
5. d. skeleton
6. b. pot
7. c. snacks
8. b. headphones
9. c. cover
10. c. soil

Language Functions p. 155

1. Complete the following dialogue

1. First
2. Second
3. Then
4. Next
5. Finally

Excel yourself p. 155-156

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. loses
2. c. rid
3. d. wasting

2. Read and correct

1. Ahmed must / must Ahmed
2. shouldn't to / shouldn't
3. will watch / watch

General Exercises p. 157-158

1. Complete the following dialogue:

1. title
2. fisherman
3. help
4. end
5. ate

2. Choose the correct

1. d. When
2. d. get
3. d. dangerous
4. c. poisonous
5. b. flat
6. c. sting
7. a. When
8. c. lines
9. c. famous
10. a. diving
11. d. careful
12. b. took
13. b. tails
14. c. whale
15. a. environment

4. Read and correct

1. woke / wake
2. didn't / don't
3. kept / keep
4. laughed / laugh
5. are / be
6. didn't / don't

Test 6 on unit 11 p. 159/ 161

2. Complete the following dialogue

1. Sure
2. shark
3. Because
4. when / if
5. from

4. Choose the correct

1. b. rubbish
2. c. skeleton
3. b. fisherman
4. b. recycle
5. c. line
6. d. gloves
7. a. rubbish
8. c. boils
9. d. mustn't
10. c. feels

5. Read and correct

1. knew / know
2. should / shouldn't
3. mustn't / must
4. drank / drink

Unit 12

Lesson 1

Vocabulary p. 165/166

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. accountant
2. b. computer programmer
3. d. photographer
4. b. scientist
5. b. architect

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. d. footballer
2. d. businessman
3. b. dentist
4. a. writer
5. b. pilot
6. c. machine
7. c. engineer
8. d. engine
9. d. meeting
10. b. businesswoman

Grammar p. 167/168

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. who
2. b. which
3. a. who
4. d. whose
5. d. who

2. Read and correct

1. when / who
2. who / which
3. where / who

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. which
2. b. who
3. c. who
4. b. which
5. d. who
6. c. who
7. a. when
8. a.who
9. b. who
10. c. who

2. Read and correct

1. which / where
2. when / who
3. where / who

Lesson 2

Vocabulary p. 172/173

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. b. terrible
2. c. results
3. b. tests
4. d.ocean
5. c. interesting

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. a. marine biologist
2. c. at
3. a. result
4. a. diving
5. c. did
6. a. laboratory
7. b. research
8. c. terrible
9. b. reefs
10. b. weather

Grammar p. 175/176

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. d. isn't
2. c. does he
3. b. don't you
4. c. doesn't
5. c. aren't

2. Read and correct

1. aren't / are
2. don't / aren't
3. are / do

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. d. don't
2. c. isn't
3. b. are
4. c. doesn't
5. a. can he
6. d. isn't it
7. c. does he
8. d. aren't they
9. c. can't it
10. b. doesn't he

2. Read and correct
1. wasn't / isn't
2. she / he
3. didn't / doesn't

Lessons 3 & 4

Vocabulary p. 181

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer
1. b. culture
2. c. married
3. a. Education
4. b. earn
5. b. skill

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. pass 2. b. subject
3. b. job 4. c. workshop
5. b. adult 6. c. culture
7. c. skills 8. d. pottery
9. c. earn

Grammar p. 183/184

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. c. be 2. c. don't do
3. a. will see 4. c. go
5. b. will win

2. Read and correct
1. to talk / talk
2. ran / run
3. would / will

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer
1. a. won't
2. b. don't listen
3. c. will you see 4. c. is
5. a. will have 6. b. if
7. b. will take
8. c. won't learn 9. a. go

2. Read and correct
1. came / come
2. was / is
3. felt / feels

Lessons 5 & 6

Vocabulary p. 188/189

Check up exercises

1. Choose the correct answer
1. a. exciting
2. a. app
3. b. countryside
4. c. disappear
5. d. cure

Homework exercises

1. Choose the correct answer

1. d. drive 2. b. make
3. b. electric 4. a. Exciting
5. a. revise 6. b. predictions
7. a. cure 8. c. disappear

Language Functions p. 189

- Complete the following dialogue:

1. app 2. book
3. job 4. programmer
5. design

Excel yourself p. 190

1. Choose the correct answer
1. b. shall we
2. b. especially
3. b. aren't I

2. Read and correct
1. wasn't / didn't
2. doesn't / does
3. doesn't / didn't

General Exercises p. 191/192

1. Complete the following dialogue

1. engineer 2. machines
3. Do 4. Yes
5. you

2. Choose the correct

1. b. meeting
2. c. after
3. d. don’t
4. c. isn’t
5. a. will
6. b. there
7. b. don’t
8. c. doesn’t
9. d. doesn’t
10. d. Pottery
11. d. gets
12. c. workshop
13. d. adult
14. a. jewellery
15. b. angry

3. Read and correct

1. isn’t / don’t
2. should / shouldn’t
3. can’t / can
4. doesn’t / isn’t
5. did / didn’t
6. will / won’t
7. were / weren’t
8. speaks / doesn’t speak
9. went / go
10. got / get

Test 7 on unit 12 p. 193/195

2. Complete the following dialogue

1. Yes
2. whales
3. is
4. long
5. should

4. Choose the correct

1. b. volunteered
2. d. who
3. b. studies
4. b. won’t you
5. d. university
6. a. workshops
7. b. Jewellery
8. a. spent
9. b. language
10. d. hopeful

5. Read and correct

1. was \ is
2. which \ who
3. would \ will
4. are \ aren’t

Test 8 on Review (D) p. 198 / 200

3. Complete the following dialogue

1. planet
2. problem
3. recycle
4. showers
5. Yes

4. Choose the correct

1. b. showers
2. a. reserve
3. c. get
4. a. can’t it
5. b. were
6. d. tired
7. a. recycle
8. b. environment
9. d. teeth
10. b. Cushions

5. Read and correct

1. didn’t / don’t
2. which / who
3. mustn’t / must
4. don’t / do